

401 It's **extraordinary / incredible that** the Black Baroness had managed to **stand `up to / stand `against / challenge / defy / the authority** of her husband.

Her **standing against / up to** the Black Baron, is an event in which the baroness **reigns supreme**.

The White Baron and his son together with the Black Baroness and her daughter are called to the court by the King.

It has been a **tumultuous** time in their life.

The King wants to **amass** information, **express / show**
ê`mas

10 his **appreciation**, and praise the **conspirators' exploits**.
kên`spirêtêz

Showing **indomitable** courage in the face of **adversity**, the baroness in particular **extorts** admiration **from** the King.

Having **overcome** many **adversities**, all three of them receive an **`accolade** from the king for their **deft** leadership.

The King allows the White Baron to incorporate the disputed land into his barony in return for a **promise to** continue the **tilt at** anarchistic barons.

Ruling their baronies by **`arbitrary** decisions, many barons have managed to **usurp** power.
ju~`zê~p

20 Growing anarchy threatens to **tilt the balance (of power)** **in favour** of the barons and **away from** the King.

As the situation seems to **tilt in favour of** the barons the crises threatens to **tilt** the situation **away from** the King.

So the King must **keep a curb on** baronial anarchy in order to prevent a **tilt toward(s)** baronial anarchy / prevent the situation from **tilting toward(s)** anarchy.

Worried by the prospect of emotional, religious, economic, and political **turmoil**, the King has to **stymie** the barons in order to **curb** their **exploitation** of the lower classes.

30 The **arbitrary** barons must be **foiled in** their attempts to **arrogate (to themselves)** more and more power.

The King must **foil** the barons' plots and plans, **at (the) worst / worst of all** an attempt to **usurp** the throne.

He must **thwart** the **usupers'** ambitions, plans and efforts, **if the worst comes to the worst /**

A& if worst comes to worst, an attempt to **usurp** the King.

As the White Baron and the baroness now **emerge as** **key figures** in the King's campaign against tyrannical barons, the barons are **thwarted in** their attempts at **usurpation**.

* utroligt at -
* sætte sig op imod > * = * udfordre >
* trodse > * ngs. myndighed
* ... ng.
* rangere > * i top
~ være i højsædet
*
* forvirret
* samle (information) * udtrykke / vise >
* påskønnelse * sammensvorende * bedrift
* ukuelig (mod) * modgang
* aftvinge ngt. fra ng.
* overvinde ngt. * genvordigheder
* anerkendelse, hyldest * dygtig
hædersbevisning behændig
*
* løfte om at -
* kamp mod ng.
* vilkårlig
egenrådig
* tilrane sig ngt.
* vippe / tippe > * (magt-) balancen
* over mod ng. * væk fra ng.
* tippe / vende sig til fordel for ng.
* vende ngt. ufordelagtigt for ng.
* holde i ave
* drejning mod ngt.
* hælde mod ngt.
* bekymret ved ngt.
* tummel * lægge hindring i vejen for ng.
uro
* bremse / dæmpe * udnyttelse
tøjle / styre ngt.
* egenmægtig * forhindre i ngt.
/ -rådig
* tilrane (sig) ngt.
* forpurre / (for-) hindre ngt. * i værste fald
* i værste fald / allerværst * tilrane sig ngt.
* forpurre / (for-) hindre ngt. * magttilraner
* hvis det værste skulle ske
* = * tage magten over ng.
* træde frem /
fremstå som ngt.
* nøgleperson
* (fo-) hindre ng. i ngt. * magttilraning

402 The end of the **tumultuous** years of feud could

`**herald** a new **era** of peace.

Every squire looks forward to be **knighted** by the King
and **receive a knighthood**.

The King wants to **dub** the White Baron's son **a knight**

The King decides to **confer knighthood (up)on** him.

When the King `**designates** him (**as**) **a knight**
he **makes** him **a knight**.

The White Baron, the Baroness and court officials attend
10 the **accolade**, the ceremony of **conferring knighthood**.

In the accolade the king will strike the candidate lightly
upon the shoulder with the flat of a sword.

The King **solemnly gives** the White Baron's son
the **accolade**, a light blow upon the shoulder with the flat of
a sword.

The White Baron's son **proudly receives** the **accolade**.

When he **swears** an **oath** / a **vow** of **allegiance** to the King,
he **swears / pledges allegiance** and **loyalty** to the King.

As he now **owes allegiance** to the King,
20 he has a duty to **give allegiance** to the King.

Taking an **oath of chivalry**, he `**solemnly** promises
to assist the King by doing **knightly deeds of chivalry**.

As a knight, the son must have his own **knightly** armour
and equipment (U): a horse, a sword, a **suit of armour**,
a (**coat of**) **mail** or a **chain mail** and a surcoat
with a **coat of arms**.

Making a suit of armour, the **armourer rivets** metal plates
and leather together, punching in **rivets**.

The baron's son is a horse **fiend / fanatic / maniac**.
30 Years ago the son got a **male foal sired** by the baron's
finest **stallion**.

The **sire** and **dam** are only used for breeding.

Next time the **mare foaled**, it gave birth to a female foal,
a fine **filly**.

The son has carefully trained the young male horse
so the **colt** is now **ready to** serve as his knightly stallion.

A horse may **spill / unseat** its rider.

Dressed in his suit or armour, a rider risks **serious injuries**
if he **takes a spill on** his horse.

* forvirret
voldsom
* indvarsle >

* æra
periode

* ~ udnævnet / slået til ridder

* modtage ridderskab

* slå ng. til ridder

* tildele ng. ridderskab

* udpege ng. til >

* ridder

* gøre ng. Til >

* =

*

* akkolade
ridderslag

* overføre /
tildele ngt.

* ridderskab

* ~ ved udnævnelsen til ridder

*

* højtideligt give ng. >

* ridderslag

*

* stolt

* modtage ...

* sværge > * en ed / et løfte om >

* troskab / loyalitet
overfor ng.

* sværge / love ...

* skyld ng. troskab

* yde ...

* aflægge ...

* ridderlighed
(= ridderløfte)

* højtidelig

* ridderlig

* bedrift
dåd

* ridderskab

* riddermæssig

* rustning

* brynje

* ringbrynje

* våbenskjold

* våbensmed

* nitte
nagle

* nitte
nagle

* fanatiker, sværmer, tosse

* han-

* føl

* avle

* hingst

* fader-

* moderdyr

* hoppe

* fole

* hoppeføl

*

* hingsteføl
plag

* parat / i stand til at -

* kaste ng. af

* alvorlige

* kvæstelser

* komme ud for et fald på / fra ngt.

403 A knight has to have a page and a squire in his service.	*
If anything goes wrong either the page or something else	*
could always be accused of being the villain of the piece .	* skurken, ~ den / det der er skyld i ulykkerne
Serving as a knight, a squire or a page is a taxing job.	* krævende
A knight must have the requisite qualifications for the job.	* fornødne, påkræve * kvalifikationer til ngt.
Requisite skills and experience in chivalry	* nødvendig, påkræven * ridderskab
are a requisite for entry into knighthood.	* krav / nødvendighed for ngt. * indtræden i ngt.
The knights educate the squires and pages in chivalry:	* uddanne ng. i ngt.
the sum of ideal qualifications of a knight, including courtesy,	*
10 generosity, valour , dexterity in arms and art of war.	* tapperhed, mod
The apprenticeship as page and squire is more taxing	* krævende
than (it) is generally believed .	* end almindeligt antaget
Some of the problems tax the apprentices;	* bebyrde ng.
the questions really tax their brains .	* udfordre ngs. tanker
The pupils sometimes tax the knight's patience .	* sætte ngs. tålmodighed på prøve trække veksler på ngs. ...
When the baron's son and his apprentices practice fencing ,	* fægtning
they fence with foils .	* fægte * kårde
As the White Baron's son is engaged to the daughter of	* blive trolovet til / forlovet med ng.
the Black Baron, the couple are engaged to be married .	* ... for at blive gift
20 She is his fiancée and he is her fiancé .	* trolovet, forlovet * =
The engaged couple shall marry soon after their turbulent	* forlovede par
and tumultuous courtship .	* forlovelsestid
People from far and near are invited, and the guest list	* fra nær og fjern * gæste- * liste
reads like a roll-call of men and women of honour.	* ~ lyder som > * navne- * mænd / kvinder ⇔ hæders- opråb af >
It's a matter of common courtesy to acknowledge a letter.	* ... et spørgsmål (sag) * bekræfte modtagelsen af / om almindelig høflighed takke for ngt.
It's only common courtesy to do so.	* kun / blot ...
People should at least have the courtesy to write and say	* have høflighed nok til at
they'd be prevented from coming / are otherwise engaged .	* forhindret i at komme / optaget af noget andet
Ablaze with yellow and green, the church is decorated with	* ~ strålende af (farve) * udsmykket med >
30 a dazzling array of daffodils as bright heralds of spring.	* blændende * række * påske lilje * budbringer af ngt. af skønhed væld
Snowdrops , winter aconites and crocuses flower while	* vintergæk * erantis * krokus * blomstre
it's still winter, while the white narcissus (pl: narcissi)	* pinselilje
flowers later than the daffodil.	* blomstre
All the guests invited have / keep it in mind / view	* ~ holde sig for øje / være opmærksom på >
to show up a decent interval before the event.	* at - * anstændig, passende * stykke tid
It's a sacrilege to show up at a wrong and bad moment .	* på > * forkert * dårligt * tidspunkt ubejligt
The church keeps most of it's religious curiosities	* kuriositet
locked up but the church itself is a historical curiosity .	* usædvanlig ting * =

404 The aristocracy **pay courtesy calls on** the King.

The White Baron fully realizes that `progress is **shackled** by a **mass of** feudal regulations.

The White Baron **assiduously courts** the court officials.

The White Baron **pays a courtesy visit to** the King.

Within the **time allotted**, the King lets him know that he ^{ê`låtîd} **opposes shackling** the trade **with** heavy taxes and duties.

The production has its basis in the village, a **cluster** of houses and households, usually joined together by a common

10 livelihood such as farming, fishing, **wooding, mining**, etc.

In some **deprived** areas, the **deprived** people live without having the things necessary for a comfortable and happy life.

The baron **frees** the villeins **from villeinage / villainage** on condition that they agree to rent their farms.

The **villeins** become **freeholders; tenant farmers** and **villagers**.

By giving the farmers the possibility for making a profit of their own the White Baron encourages **exploitation of** agricultural production especially **wool**.

20 The White Baron's **vision** is being **heralded as** a **blueprint** for the future of the barony.

Allocating land and money **for** the foundation of a **mill**, ^{`alêkeiting} the baron **allocates** some land and money (**to** the villagers)

He **allocates** the villagers a piece of land and some money.

So **alloting** land and money **to** the foundation of a mill, ^{ê`lotîng} the baron **allots** land and money (**to** the villagers).

He **allots** the villagers a piece of land and a sum of money

The baron's **allocation of** land and **allocations of** money **provide a breeding ground for private enterprise**.

30 The **allotment** of land and the **allotments** of money **enable** the villagers to start a **business on their own initiative**.

So a **water mill** for grinding corn into flour is founded (**by**) **courtesy of** the White Baron's **allocations** and **allotments**.

When water from the **millpond** starts turning the **mill wheel** and **millstone**, it's **heralded as** a way forward in prosperity.

It is expected that trade and economy will **progress**. ^{prê`gres}

The baron claims that the **rise / increase in** production is the **herald** of economic recovery.

* aflægge høflighedsvisit hos ng.

* hæmmet af ng.

* mængde (af) * regulativ, ~ forordning

* flittigt * bejle til ng.

* =

* indenfor den afsatte / tildelte tid

* modsætte sig / * hæmme ng. med ngt.

kæmpe imod ng.

* klynge

*

* levebrød * skovbrug * minedrift

udkomme & brændesamling

* forarmet * & afsavnlidende

*

* frigive ng. fra > * livegenskab, hoveri

*

* hovbonde * frie lejere * forpagter

* landsbyboer

*

* udnyttelse af ng.

* uld

* vision * (blive) udråbt som ng.

* blåttryk, ~ plan / rettesnor for ng.

* afsætte / tildele / bevil(li)ge ng. til > * mølle

* - - - (til ng.)

* tildele ng. ng.

* uddele ng. til ng.

* - - - (til ng.)

* tildele ng. ng.

* tildeling af ng.

* skabe grobund for > * privat initiativ

* tildeling * = * sætte ng. i stand til

* forretninger * på eget initiativ

* vand- * mølle * >

* ~ takket være > * tildeling

* mølledam * mølle- * hjul

* møllesten * udråbe ng. som ng.

* det forventes at - * gøre fremskridt

* stigning i (produktion)

* varsel om / forløber for ng.

405 Later on, **saw, spinning, cloth, cotton, paper, steel,**
etc. **mills** are founded **round about**.

At the **rolling mill**, the **rolling mill rolls** and **flattens**
metal **bars** into **sheets** between its **rollers**.

The **conveyor (belt)** moves on steel **rollers**.

People who work at the mills **settle down** in the villages
together with tradesmen, shopkeepers and craftsmen.

No more **shackled by** old customs and regulations,
some townfolks establish business and trading companies
10 which **thrive on** commercial and economic **exploitation**
of agricultural and industrial products.

All kinds of goods are brought **into town** and **out of town**.

Experts in the **exploiting of mineral resources**
take steps to **exploit** the **iron ore** from **veins** in the local rock.

Little by little the village grows bigger and gradually
developes into a larger community, a **town** of hundreds
or thousands of **inhabitants**, having definite borders
and certain local powers of government.

The **town `hall** is a **civic** building containing
20 the **civic government** which **consists of /**
is comprised of / comprises civic leaders.

In Britain the **civic `centre** is an area where the public
buildings are, while in the US the **civic center** is a building
where public entertainments and meetings are held.

Many **citizens** who have a sense of **civic pride**,
civic spirit, and **civic responsibility** feel that they
have a responsibility / duty to serve the town.

So **doing** their **civic duty for** the town a great part of
the **citizenry** of the town and join the **civic guards** (pl.)

30 As they **have a responsibility to** the children, the parents,
the Church, and the schools are **responsible for** teaching
the children **good citizenship**.

A **town dweller** is either a townsman or townswoman.

Some **townspeople**, townsmen and townswomen,
rent **allotments** (E) for **growing vegetables**.

Presenting new products, **giving a presentation on** them,
manufacturers and business people are **courting** big city
distributers and export businesses **with a view to**
penetrate the **emerging** markets of the big cities and abroad.

* sav- * spinde- * klæde- * bomuld- * papir- * stål-
* mølle, ~ værk / fabrik * rundt omkring
(spinning mill = spinderi)
* ~ valseværk * valsemaskine * valse > * udflade >
* plade * bar, stang * valse
* transportbånd * rulle
* slå sig ned
*
* lænket, ~ bundet af (skik etc.)
*
* trives ved ngt. * udnyttelse
*
* ind til byen * ud af ...
* << * mineral * resurse
* udnytte > * jern- * malm * åre
*
* by
* indbygger
*
* rådhus * officiel bymæssig
* by- * styre * bestå af >
* er sammensat af > * omfatte > * borger- * ledere
* byadministrations- og servicecenter
* ~ forsamlingshus
*
* borger * borgerstolthed
* = * borgerlig ansvarlighed
* have en forpligtelse / pligt til at -
* gøre sin pligt
* borgerskab * borgervæbning
indbyggere
* have en forpligtelse overfor ng.
* være ansvarlig for at -
* borgerdyder
* byboer
* borgere
byboerer
* kolonihave * dyrke > * grøn(t)sager
* præsentere / * give > * præsentation /
fremvise (produkt) fremvisning af ngt.
* bejle til ng.
* med henblik på at -
* trænge ind på > * fremdukkende (marked)

406 The town develops into a borough , a fortified urban community organized as and having some of the powers of an independent country or city-state .	* købstad * * bystat *	* befæstet
People who come to sell their products in a town or city have to pass one of the town gates or city gates where they have to pay a duty on their goods.	* * byport *	
A borough today is a town or part of a big city that is responsible for managing its own affairs.	* kommune *	
A borough may be a con`stituency , a town or an area, 10 represented by a Member of Parliament.	* valgkreds *	
The emergence of parliamentarism is one of the greatest triumphs of civilized countries and emergent democracies, nations or states.	* opdukken, -ståen fremkomst * triumf *	* & spirende
In a democracy the parliament must remain sovereign .	* suveræn overmyndig	
Some people have strong political allegiances while others are more inclined to switch / transfer / change allegiance .	* have ... tilknytningsforhold * skifte >	* tilknytning
In England a city is a large town that has been given an official title by the reigning monarch, the king or queen, and usually having a cathedral .	* (stor-) by * regerende * katedral *	
20 In US a city is a town of any size that has definite powers officially given by the state government.	* *	
A descendant of the White Baron has a house in town (U); it's a house in the town of Woolfield in the town`centre (E).	* i byen * i byen ...	* bymidte
He and his family live in the rich part of town .	* bydel	
In the summer they leave town to stay out of town for weeks.	* forlade byen *	* væk fra byen
As poverty begets violence it's no wonder that those of the out-of-town neighbourhoods where the poor people live are the rough parts of town.	* vold avler vold * * udenfor bymidten	* ikke underligt at - * bydel
30 The poor are more subjects to diseases than the rich.	* være genstand / udsat for ngt.	
One of the advantages of living in the town is to be able to hide in the crowd and hide from the long arm of the law and avoid being caught in the meshes of the law .	* leve / bo > * gemme sig for > * fanget i >	* i byen lovens lange arm * lov
Children of newcomers to a town / new arrivals at a town become townees / <neis who know much about life in a / the town , and little about life in the countryside .	* nytilkomne til (by) * bybo / -menneske * ~ livet * i en by / byen	* ... på landet
Especially a daughter of the family becomes a real townei , a city`slicker who looks down upon small-town values and small-town views.	* bybo * storbygøjser * =	* småbys-

407 A rich nobleman from out of town falls for the daughter	* ~ udenbys fra	* falde > for ng.
hook, line and sinker / like a ton of briks.	* krog * line * sænk * som > * ton * mursten ~ helt og aldeles / ~ med voldsom kraft = pladask * erobring	
She isn't just one of his `conquests.		
The out-of-town aristocrat, wants to take the daughter	* tage ng. >	
out for a night on the town.	* med ud til ng.	* ~ en tur i byens nattelev
She graciously accepts the young nobleman's invitation.	* venligt, elskværdigt	
So they go out on the town one night.	* tage i byen	
Having easily engaged the young lady in conversation,	* ~ få ng. med ind i (samtale)	
the gentleman wonders how to raise the subject of	* komme ind på emnet / få rejst spørgsmålet om ng.	
10 engagement, and get onto the subject of marriage.	* forlovelse	* - = -
He has to broach the prickly subject of settlement to her.	* bringe > på bane * emne * overfor ng. tage hul på >	
It's a thorny subject so he is dreading having to	* ømtåleligt * = frygte / være bange for at -	
broach the subject: to broach the subject with her.	* <<	
Although where to settle is a very touchy subject of	* følsomt * (samtale-, debat-, diskussions-) emne	
conversation, debate, and discussion late at night, it's very	*	
much a subject for their conversation, debate and discussion.	* emne for ng.	
As she has a `quicksilver temperament, he'd wish	* livligt ...	
she'd drop the subject and change the subject.	* droppe / forlade > * emne * skifte ...	
Conveniently, she just then risers gracefully to her feet	* (meget) belejligt * rejse sig > * yndefuldt * (op)	
20 to go to powder her nose, and when she returns,	* pudre >	* næsen
they conveniently seem to have got off the subject.	* komme væk fra ... & ~ gå på toilettet	
Having let it drop, she apparently keeps off the subject.	* ~ lade det ligge * holde sig fra ...	
So letting the subject drop, he stays off the subject too.	* =	
The daughter keeps a diary.	* føre dagbog	
When the nobleman has to leave town for some time,	* forlade >	* byen
he is the subject of the daughter's diary every evening.	* emne i ng.	* dagbog
Some subjects have to be considered under a broader /	* under >	* bredere >
wider / larger canvas.	* = / =	* (lærred), ~ synsvinkel
For the sake of his business, they have to settle in his	* af hensyn til ng.	
30 home town, and there is no more to say on the subject.	* hjemby	* om emne
After careful / mature { consideration / deliberation,	* grundig / moden	* overvejelse / eftertanke
on thinking it over, on second thoughts,	* =	
on (furter) consideration, the daughter agrees to	* =	
move to the home town of her fiancé.	* forlovede	
When their marriage and wedding day are settled,	* bryllupsdag	
her fiancé goes to town.	* ~ slå sig løs	
He goes to town on organizing the wedding celebrations	* - - - med at - * bryllups- * højtideligheder	
and wedding festivities for his fiancée.	* bryllups- * festligheder * forlovede	
fi`ânsei E/A fi~a~n`sei		

408 The married couple hold / give a wedding reception.

Among many other things, the married couple

get some oil paintings for a wedding present.

One artist is **revolutionary** in both **subject matter**

and technique using bright / **delicate** / rich **shades** of colour.

People **admire** his **deft command** of technique.

êd' maiê

Portraits, landscapes, seascapes, townscapes

and **cityscapes** are popular **subjects with** most painters.

Still life(s) is (are) popular with some painters.

10 It takes manual dexterity, deft hands and deft fingers,
to be a skilful **figurative** painter.

Her husband has studied at a university.

As they **amass** information and knowledge, some students

ê`mas

glean additional information from select people and books.

The husband reads books **on** many different **subjects**.

Some **serious** books have an **occasional gleam** of humour.

A **fascinating subject matter** makes a novel **riveting**;

it makes **riveting** reading.

Reading some passages, his eyes are **riveted to** the text.

20 Riveted by the action, he is **riveted on** the novel.

He **has a** good / **an** excellent **command of** French.

His wife **has a** poor **command of** grammar.

In the **subject** of grammar, it is taught that, in a sentence,

the **subject** is a **noun** / o-f **substantive**, a **noun phrase**

`...

or **pronoun** representing the person or thing that performs

`prêunaun

the action of the verb about which something is **stated** or,

in a passive sentence, that is affected by the action of the verb.

The subject and the sentence verb are the main **members**
of a sentence.

30 Natural science was the husband's **favourite subject**.

`feivêrit

As **subjects of / for** his **experiments with / on creatures**,

he may use **guinea pigs** as **experimental / research animals**,

`gini

or he may **experiment with / on** himself as a **guinea pig**.

Experimenting with`alchemy as an **alchemist**,

he tried to find **the philosopher's stone** which could change

ordinary metals into gold or silver, or make people live forever.

He often used **quicksilver** also called **mercury**

as **subject of / for** the experiments to produce gold.

All theories and results turned out to be a **`mare's nest**.

meêz

* holde bryllupsreception

*

* få > olie- * maleri * i / som > * bryllups- * gave

* revolutionær

* indhold
emne, motiv, tema
* nuance

* sart >

* beundre ngt.

* dygtig

* beherskelse af ngt.

* portræt

* landskab

* marinebillede
søstykke

* bymotiv

* storbymotiv

* motiv hos ng.

* stilleben, opstilling

* manuel

* behændighed

* behændig

* =

~ fingernemhed

* figurativ

*

* samle / ophobe ngt.

* sanke ~ samle ngt. møjsommeligt sammen

* om ... emne

* seriøs (bog)

* lejlighedsvis

* glimt af ngt.

* fascinerende

* indhold

* fascinerende
fængslende

* =

* naglet til ngt.

* fascineret af ngt.

* naglet til /
fængslet af ngt.

* have godt styr på ngt.

* ... dårligt ...

* emne

fag

* subjekt
grundled

* substantiv
navneord

* navneforbindelse

* pronomen

stedord

* angivet

*

* led

*

* favorit- / yndlings-

* fag

* genstand for > * eksperiment med / på > * skabning
(& forsøgsperson)

* marsvin

* forsøgs-

* dyr

* eksperimentere med / på ngt.

* ~ forsøgsdyr
forsøgsperson

* eksperimentere med ngt.

* alkymi

* alkymist

* " filosoffens sten "

*

* kviksølv

* mercurium

* grundlag for ngt.

* noget værre rod, en skrøne / and

409 The town crier shouts news.	* byudråber	
The crier makes an official announcement about	* =	
the King's visit.	*	
When the King is in town , the whole town turn out to watch	* være i byen	* hele byen
the King and his entourage / retinue marching in procession .	* marchere >	* i procession
'The people await you, sire ,' a courtier points out	* (kongelig tiltaleform)	* påpege
before the King is going to appear for his subjects .	* vise sig for	gøre opmærksom på * undersøgt
A tumult of shouting and screaming comes from the crowd,	* ophidset larm	
^{`tju-mùlt} so the procession is subject to delay occasioned by tumult .	* genstand / * forsinkelse * forårsaget af > * tumult ~ i fare for >	
10 The earls and barons today have no authority over	* ... autoritet over ng.	
the people in the county.	*	
The county town is the main town of the county	* amtshovedby	* hovedby
where its government is.	*	
The county `council is a group of people elected to be	* amtsråd	
members of the local government of the county.	*	
The town `council (eE) is an elected group of people,	* byråd	
town `councillors , who are responsible for public areas	* byrådsmedlem	
and services in a particular town.	*	
The town `hall contains the government offices	* rådhus	
20 and, in Britain, usually a hall for public meeting, etc.	*	
Town `planning (E) is a high / top priority	* byplanlægning	* være en højt / top- prioriteret sag
with the town `planners at the town hall.	* by-	* planlægger
The city council is the group of elected officials	* by-	* råd
sometimes called the city `fathers who are responsible for	* ~ byens fædre	
governing the city.	*	
The city `hall is the building which houses the government	* rådhus	* huse ng.
of the city.	*	
In America the city hall is the local government	* lokaladministrationen	
and the offices it uses.	*	
30 There has been a `citywide campaign to go to vote	* omfattende hele byen	* ~ gå hen at - * stemme >
(E inf to go and vote) in the municipal election .	* (gå hen og ...)	* ~ ved > * by- * valg (angående)
Shoddy construction tips the balance / the csales //	* sjusket * konstruktion * ~ vende stemningen ~ byggesjusk	
swings the balance in favour of citizens who want	* - - - >	* til fordel for > * borger
some graceless architecture of the 60s to be demolished .	* charmeforladt	* revet. ned
Many city dwellers are bothered with bad means	* byboere	* besværet af ngt.
of transport especially traffic difficulties in the inner city .	* indre by	
Troubled with bad means of conveyance , the city looks	* besværet med > * transport	* byen (-s borgere)
forward to better planning and public transport E / A	* offentlig transport	
public transportation / transit .	* =	

410 The **Home`Counties** are situated around London.

The City is the area of the oldest part of London

which today is Britain's financial and business centre.

Business people keep an eye on **the City's** reaction

expressed by **City bankers**, **City stockbrokers** etc.

An **engagement book / diary** (E/A) a **date book** should

keep people's **social** and **business engagements** organized.

Another agreements is usually refused because of

a **prior engagements**.

10 In England **the gentry** (o-f), are the class under the nobility

The **landed gentry** own large tracts of land.

Otherwise **the gentry** are people belonging to the higher

social classes.

Members of the gentry settle in certain areas of the city.

Some **slummy** neighbourhoods **undergo gentrification**,
as old **poor districts** and even **slums** are **gentrified**.

In order not to **slum it / be slumming** in the country,
some members of the upper class have a **seat** (E),
a **country`house** or **country`seat**, sometimes

20 in the **middle of nowhere** / in the **back of beyond**.

People go to **country clubs** where they play sports
as an **employment** for idle hours, or go to **social events**.

Some people **go in for cross-country riding**;
they ride **across country** or **cross-country**.

Some people go to **country`dancing** (E).

Some people prefer a more **sedentary lifestyle**
characterized by a **sedentary job / occupation**,
sedentary work and **sedentary activities**.

Some people **soak up** knowledge and language.

30 Happy to **get to** or **find** the **answers** or **solutions to**
a mathematical **problem**, to a **crossword (puzzle)**,
or to a **quiz** they enjoy **solving** a mathematical **problem**,
answering a **quiz**, or **doing / solving** a **crossword (puzzle)**.

A **solution** may be found in a **key** or be printed elsewhere.

Some people **idle soaking up** the sun (<shine) / warmth.

Some people become increasingly **sedentary in later life**.

Some animals are (largely) **sedentary**

while others are **migratory**.
`maigrêtri

* =		
* =		
*		
* =		
* city ...	* bankier	* børsrådgiver vekslerer
* ~ mødekalendar		
* social / forretnings-		* aftale, forpligtelse
*		
* forudgående		* <<
* lavadel		
* landadel		
* det bedre borgerskab		
* social- / samfundsklasse		
*		
* slumagtig	* undergå >	* social opgradering
* fattigkvarter	* slumkvarter	* opgraderet
* ~ leve under forhold under ens normale standard		
* landsted		
* =		
* ~ langt ude på landet / uden for lands lov og ret		
* =		
* beskæftigelse	* sociale >	* ~ sammenkomster
* dyrke >	* terræn-	* ridning
* =		
* folkedans		
* stedbunden stille (-siddende)		* livsstil
* =		* job / beskæftigelse
* =	* arbejde	* =
		* aktiviteter
* suge ngt. til sig, ~ nemt tilegne sig (viden etc.)		
* komme frem til >	* finde >	* svar / løsning på >
* & opgave	* quiz	* krydsogtværs (-opgave)
* løse >		* =
* = = =		
* løsning		* facitliste
* ~ lave ingenting		* ~ nyde (solen etc.)
* stedbunden stille (-siddende)		* ~ senere i livet
* stedbunden		
* trækkende		

A TAX PROTESTER

411 Over the years the governments have effected changes	* i tidens løb	* effektueret, gennemført (forandringer)
in the taxation structure .	* beskatnings-	* struktur
People pay tax according to income,	* betale > * skat	~ skattesystem * i overensstemmelse med ngt.
and businesses pay tax according to profits.	*	
People who have a taxable income or taxable earnings (pl.)	* beskatningsmæssig	* indtægter indkomst
businesses and companies which have a taxable profit	* =	
are taxpayers .	* skatteyder	
The tax minister is in charge of the ministry for taxation	* skatteministeriet	
which takes care of fiscal matters.	* skattemæssig	
10 The tax year begins on April the 6 th in Britain	* april	
and on January 1 st in the US.	*	
Poll tax has the same rate of taxation	* kopskat	
while a progressive or graduated system of taxation	* progressiv	* gradueret * skattesystem
has a number of tax brackets and perhaps a tax threshold .	* skatteintrin / -gruppe	* skattefri bundgrænse
PAYE (pay as you earn) E/A withholding tax	* ~ kildeskat	
is a system for paying tax in which tax is taken from	*	
wage earners' wages and salary earners' salaries	* ugeløn (-s) * lønmodtager	* månedsløn (-) * =
and paid directly to the government.	*	
The company pays corporation tax .	* selskabsskat	
20 VAT (value added tax) E/A sales tax is tax paid	* meromsætningsafgift	* omsætningsafgift
in addition to the cost of goods and services you are buying.	*	
In Britain the local council charges` council tax (U)	* opkræve / udskrive >	* kommuneskat
based on the value of a persons home.	*	
If you own a car in Britain you must pay `road tax (U).	* vejskat, ~ vægtafgift	
A `tax disc says untill when the car is taxed .	* skatteskive	
Taxpayers have to fill in a `tax return , a form in which they	* selvangivelse	
give information so that the tax can be calculated by	*	
the taxation authorities : the Inland Revenue (E)	* skattemyndighed	* skattedepartementet
or Internal Revenue (A).	* =	
30 (Some information is put in brackets / parentheses .)	* sætte ngt. i parentes	
A bracket as a round bracket (E) or parenthesis (A/E),	* parentes (-tegn)	
usually used in the plural, is either of a pair of marks / signs	*	
placed around a piece of extra information	*	
or part of a problem in mathematics [ma#`matiks] .	* ~ regneopgave	
Brackets (A) and square brackets (E) are put around	* kantet (-ede) parentes (-er)	
phonetic transcription as shown above.	* fonetisk, lydlig	* transskription, omskrivning

412 Some people leave money and property when they die.	* efterlade sig ngt.	
Those entitled to inherit , inherit money and property	* arveberettiget	* arve ngt.
from the deceased / departed.	* fra >	* (den) afdøde / bortgåede
People have to pay inheritance tax or estate tax (A&) on	* arveafgift på ngt.	
the money or property that they receive by inheritance.	* ved arv	
One of the descendants of the White Baron is very	* efterkommer	
<small>di`sendênts</small>		
annoyed with the taxman; he is annoyed at the tax burden ,	* utilfreds med ng.	* skattebyrden
and annoyed that it has risen .	* ... at	* pp. steget
<small>`rizên</small>		
Having amassed / earned a fortune ,	* samle sig	* formue
10 he is annoyed to find out that the tax load has increased.	* være ærgerlig / irriteret over at -	* skattebyrden
He takes advantage of tax shelters : ways of using	* drage fordel af >	* skattebegunstiget ordning
or investing money so he can legally avoid paying tax.	*	
You can earn up to a certain sum tax-free .	* skattefrit	
Some tax-deductible costs can be taken off your total	* skattefradragberettiget (udgift)	
<small>-dei`dùktibêl</small>	*	
income before it is taxed that is before the amount of tax	*	
that you have to pay is calculated.		
You get tax relief (U, E) when you do not have to pay	* skattelettelse	
tax on part of what you earn such as tax relief on private	*	
health insurance premiums.	*	
20 The government give a tax break to particular people	* skattelempelse	
or organizations such as a special reduction in taxes	*	
for low income families with young children.	*	
The government works to put right / rectify / redress some	* rette op på >	
imbalance(s) as it, among other things , is a sad fact that	* (uretfærdig)	* blandt andre ting
<small>-`-</small>	* ubalance / skævhed	* trist
deprived children tend to do less well at school.	* under-	* tendere
	* privilegeret	* klare sig
	* til at -	* mindre
	* skattefri	* godt
	*	* skattefritaget
Tax free income such as tax-exempt savings is income		
<small>-ig`zempt</small>		
that you do not have to pay tax on.	*	
Some charities are exempted from paying tax	* fritage ng. fra ngt.	
as well as money donated to charity is exempt (adj.) from tax.	* fritaget fra ngt.	
30 Tax-payers must warrant that they are entitled to	* garantere for at -	
either a tax break or a tax exemption .	* skattelempelse	* skattefrihed
A tax avoider may exploit tax exemption on money	* skatteunddrager	* ... for ngt.
donated to charity.	*	
Even if some people complain about paying tax,	*	
it's the government's job to put right / rectify / redress	* rette op på / bringe orden i >	
a / the imbalance between public expenditure	* (u-) balancen mellem ngt.	
<small>-`-</small>	*	
and tax revenues.		
A government may roll back one or more taxes.	* rulle > (en skat / flere skatter) tilbage	

413 The **tax protester** sends in an article **ready to publish**
prê`testêr
subject to the editor's approval.

The article is a **contribution to the joust about tax.**

Subjecting the tax system **to penetrating** criticism,
the author of the article **jousts with** political opponents.

The **headline** is **foist (up)on** him by the **editor.**

The **city desk** at a British newspaper is the department
that deals with the financial news.

The **city editor** is the **journalist** who is responsible for
10 the financial news.

The editor **edits** the newspaper **on his own responsibility.**

At an American newspaper, the **city desk**
and the **city editor** deal with the local news.

Journalists, authors and other writers are humorously
or **disapprovingly** called **scribblers.**

There's an element of **subjectivity** in any kind of criticism,
sûbdʒek`tiviti
and anyone's opinion is **bound to be subjective**
sêb`dʒektiv
but this article **reflects a** highly **subjective** points of view.

The tax system is **subjectively perceived as / to be unfair.**
ûn`feê
20 People less **subjectively** involved are better judges.

Subjectivism is a philosophical teory that all knowledge
and moral values are subjective rather than objective that is
to say based on truth that actually exists in the real world.

Annoyed about the difference between profit before tax
and profit after tax, the **tax avoider** and **tax dodger** not
only **thinks in terms of tax advantages, tax avoidance**
and **tax dodging** but also practices **illegal tax dodges.**

One day, though, he is charged with **tax cheat, tax evasion,**
tax fiddling and **tax fraud** by the **tax inspector.**

30 Having **exploited loopholes in the fiscal legislation,**
this **tax evader** has been cheating the **taxman** for years.

In order to **avoid / evade** (paying) tax in his **own country,**
the **tax fiddler / tax cheat** goes to live as a **tax exile**
in a foreign country, a so called **tax haven,**
where the **burden of taxation** is less **heavy.**

Exploitation of tax loopholes, tax dodging,
and an **exodus of taxpayers** are a **fiendish** problem.
`fi~ndi\$
It's a **fiendishly** complicated problem which costs
honest **taxpayers** a lot of money.

* skatte- * protestmager * parat / færdig til at -
demonstrant
* forudsat / * redaktør * godkendelse
under forudsætning af >
* indlæg i > * strid om ngt.
* udsætte ngt. for * skarpsindig (kritik)
* kæmpe mod ng.
* overskrift * påtvinge ng. ngt. * redaktør
* finansredaktionen
*
* finanssekretær * journalist
*
* redigere (avis) * på eget ansvar
* lokalredaktion
* lokalredaktør
*
* misbilligende, nedsættende * skribler, smører
* subjektivitet
* ~ være nødvendigvis > * subjektiv
* afspejle > * = (synspunkt)
* subjektivt * opfattet som (at være) > * uretfærdigt
personligt
* personligt
* subjektivisme
*
*
* utilfreds over
* skattefidusmager
* tænke > * i henseende af > * skatte- * ...-
-fordele undvigelse
* = * ulovlig * skattekrumspring
* skattesnyderi / -svig
* = * skatteinspektør
* udnytte > * smuthul i > * skattelovgivning
* skatteunddrager * skattefar
* undgå / unddrage sig (at) ngt. * eget land
* skattefusker / skattesnyder * skatteflygtning
* skattely
* skattebyrde * tung, voldsom
/ -tryk
* udnyttelse * skattesmuthul * skatteunddragelse
* menneskeflugt af > * skatteydere * uhyre vanskeligt
~ skatteflugt
* uhyre
* skatteyder

414 Something must be done to **put right / rectify / redress**

an **imbalance between** tax and income, so the government

initiates a programme of sweeping reforms

to **redress the balance** (of **taxation**).

The ministry for taxation work to **close** the tax loopholes.

Plugging all loopholes is a **puzzle** of **fiendish complexity**.

The **complexities** of the tax system of his own country,

make the **fiendishly** clever **dodger** move to a **tax haven**.

All the flights **on offer** are **subject to availability**.

10 Flight prices are **subject to** changes.

They have / there's an **offer - a special offer - on** a flight.

A flight may **be on** (special) **offer** (E).

The **airline passengers** are **subject to airport tax**.

All flights are **subject to** delay.

Air safety is **subject to** international **safeguards**.

Harassed-looking stewards and stewardesses **hand out**

chewing gum wrapped in **gold** and **silver foil / E& paper**.

Foil // E& **silver paper** // **aluminium** E/A **aluminum foil** //

alê`miniêm ê`lu~minêm

tin foil) is metal made into very thin **sheets**, and sold in **rolls**.

20 The passengers are **jolted** (**forwards**) as the plane

lands **with a jolt** / touches the ground in a series of **jolts**.

The islands **emerged from** the sea thousands of years ago.

The islands' **emergence from** the sea was caused by volcanic activity.

As soon as the tourists enter foreign territory they are

subject to local law, rules, and legal agreements.

At the **customs**, travellers are **subjected to questioning** before **clearing customs** (being **allowed through customs**).

Breaking the customs regulations, a **violinist** must

30 **submit to** being **harassed by routine**.

Beyond being **routinely subjected to** **harassment**,

A&: hê`ras -

he may be **subject to a penalty**; penalty min. \$100.

The penalty for a first offence is usually a **fine**.

There has been a **rash of smuggling** over a period.

The customs officials try to **foil** any attempt to **smuggle** things or people (**into** the country).

Many **smugglers** are **foiled in** their attempt to **smuggle**

owing to the emergence of new technologies.

* rette op på >

* ubalance mellem ngt&ngt.

* igangsætte > * program af > * ~ gennem- * reformer gribende

* rette op på > * balancen * i beskatning ~ skabe retfærdighed

* lukke ngt.

* lukke / * svær opgave * djævelsk * kompleksitet (til-) stoppe ngt. indviklethed

* indviklethederne

* uhyre * undviger, snyder * skatte- * ly

* i udbud * under forudsætning af > * tilgængelighed (ledige pladser)

* udsat for ngt.

* tilbud > * særligt ... > * på ngt.

* være på tilbud

* flypassager * pålagt * lufthavnsskat

* udsat for (forsinkelse)

* flysikkerhed * underlagt * sikkerhedsforanstaltninger

* fortravlet * uddele

* tyggegummi * guld- * sølvpapir

* folie * sølvpapir * aluminium- folie ~ sølvfolie

* stanniol * lag af ngt. * rulle

* (blive) rystet (puffet fremad)

* med > * et bump * bump, rystelser

* dukke op af ngt.

* opdukken af ngt.

*

*

* underlagt ngt.

* tolden * udsat for > * udspørgen

* ~ komme igennem ... * få lov til at ...

* lovovertræder

* ~ finde sig i at - * (blive) chikaneret / * ~ rutine- forulempet mæssigt

* ud over at - * rutinemæssigt * udsat for > * chikane forulempelse

* genstand for / hjemfalden til > * straf bøde

* udbrud af ngt. * smugleri

* (for-) hindre (forsøg) * smugle ngt.

* + adv.

* smugler * være forhindret i (forsøg)

* på grund af ngt. * fremkomst

415 Taking a taxi, the newcomer drives **downtown** (A).

- `taun

The driver **rests** his right **hand on** the **handbrake** (eE) * !!

also called **emergency brake** (A) or **parking brake** (A).

(an **emergency brake** or **emergency cord** (A) in a train

is called a **communication cord** in GB)

Music **blares out from** the car radio.

The radio **blares (out)** local **rhythms** in between news.

`rigmz

The local team **triumphed over** its rival.

It **triumphed** 3 – 0 in the final.

10 The club is good at spotting **emergent** talents.

They go through **uptown** (adj.) neighbourhoods,

- `taun

drive through **midtown** (U), with its **midtown** districts,

and end up **downtown** (adv.) in the **center** (A) **of the town**.

In a country where you **drive on** the **right**, you are only

allowed to **overtake** eE/eA **pass** (another vehicle) **on** the **left**.

They are **overtaken** both **on** the **left** and **on** the **inside**

- teikēn

by police cars **with blue lights** and **the sirens on**;

with **lights flashing** and **sirens blaring**.

There has been a **rash of** car thefts and burglaries

20 downtown, in the center of the city A/E the city `centre.

Most taxi drivers **welcome** their customers

with an **ingenuous** and **appreciative** smile.

Smiling **ingenuously**, some local taxi drivers **charge**

extortionate rates of pay, though.

The country has been **subject to inflation**, **symptomatic of**

but just one **symptom of** the **poor state** of the **economy**.

The government has worked hard to **conquer** the inflation.

The **`conquest** of inflation seems successful.

The taxi suddenly **jerks to a stop**; it **stops with a jerk**.

30 Having booked a room in a hotel **downtown**, the new>

comer is going to stay in the **downtown** hotel for some time.

A famous singer **performs** in the evenings.

She will be **setting out to conquer** the world.

She **emerged from** a scandal **with** her reputation intact.

‘ **In case of emergency**, press the alarm button,’

a sign says next to an **emergency exit**.

The door must be wide and easy to open **in an emergency**

as people may come **charging / rushing towards** the exits,

and **charge / rush through** the exits.

* ind i byen

* hvile > * hånd på > * håndbremse * se side 500

* nødbremse

* parkeringsbremse

* nødbremse

* =

* =

* larme / brage

drøne / gjalde ...

* fra ... =

* rytme

* sejre over

* sejre

* opdukkende

spirende

* i udkanten af byen

* kvarterer halvvejs inde i / ude af byen

* =

* bymidten, centrum

* køre i højre side, ~ højrekørsel

* overhale (ngt.)

* venstre om, ~ udenom

* overhalet

* =

* indenom

* med >

* blå

* lys, ~blink

* sirene

* på

~ fuld udrykning

* lygte, lys

* blinke

* =

* larme

* udbrud / bølge af ngt.

*

* byde ng. velkommen

* troskyldig, naiv

* anerkendende

* smil

oprigtig, åbenhjertig

taknemmeligt

* -t

* opkræve >

* ublu

* takst

⇔

* betalings-

* udsat for >

* inflation

* symptomatisk for >

* symptom på >

* elendig

* ~økonomisk

* tilstand

* bekæmpe >

* =

* bekæmpelse af >

* =

* ~ standse med et ryk

* =

* i bymidten / den indre by / centrum

* =

* optræde

* begive sig ud

* erobre

* komme ud af ngt.

* i nødstilfælde

* nødudgang

* i nødstilfælde

* skynde sig / styrte afsted mod ngt.

* ... gennem ngt.

416 The tax exile might buy a house **in uptown**,
or rent an apartment either **in midtown** or **in downtown**.

Living and working **downtown**, **midtown** or **uptown**,
he can take a **downtown** or an **uptown** bus
to **go downtown**, **midtown**, and **uptown**.

He can shop at **downtown**, **midtown** and **uptown** stores.

City`planning (A) is a high priority at **City`Hall** (A).

The city (A) is working to improve public transportation.

The next day, he walks **uptown** a couple of **blocks**

10 until he finds a cab to take him **uptown**.

He always has some extra cash with him for **emergencies**.

They visit a **vantage (point)**, a **point from** which there is
`va~ntid§

a view: in fact the **most beautiful** view **imaginable**.

The platform is surrounded by a **parapet** and **railed in / off**
so the visitors are **protected by** a low wall and a **guard rail**.

Some places, the **railing** of the **vantage (point)** has
iron plates **riveted** together in a **decorative pattern** of **rivets**.

' Don't lean over the **rail**,' a sign says.

Anything may be an **object** of **attention**,

20 so the tourists **focus** their cameras **on** various **subjects**.

Beautiful flowers **emerge all (the) year round**.

Some people are **allergic**; they **have an allergy**.

They have an allergic reaction if they **come in touch with**
or eat a particular **substance**.

Some tourists realize they are **allergic to** a certain kind of
exotic foodstuff.

Having an allergy to some kind of food, they **come out in**
an **allergic rash** if they have this kind of food.

The sun **brings** some tourists **out in** an **itchy rash**

30 and others **come out** in a **heat rash**.

Some **mountaineers** try to **climb** the highest **mountain**.
maunti`niêz

Trying to **scale** and **conquer** a **steep** mountain,
the **mountain climbers** are **linked together** by ropes.

Some people who are **allergic to** physical activity
and don't **abstain from** or cut down on **fats**

and **carbs (carbohydrates)** easily become **obese**.
ka~bêu`haidreits êu`bi~s

From the vantage (point) of the beginning of the 21st
century, **obesity** is reaching **epidemic levels / proportions**.
êu`bi~sêti

* i ydre byområde

* i mellemste ... * ~ i indre by /
bymidten / centrum
* ~ i bymidten * midtvejs i byen * i det ydre af byen

* ind-mod-byen- * mod-udkanten-af-byen-

* tage > * til bymidten * til midtvejs * til udkanten
i byen af byen
* midt-i-byen- * midtvejs-i-byen- * i udkanten-af-byen-

* byplanlægning * bystyret

* bystyret

* mod udkanten af byen * blok

* - = -

* nødstilfælde

* udkigs- / -sigtspunkt * punkt / sted hvorfra

* en udsigt * ~ skønneste * ~ man kan forestille sig
smukkeste

* lav mur * hegnet ind, indhegnet

* beskyttet af (mur) * sikkerhedsrækværk / -gelænder

* rækværk, gelænder * udkigs- / -sigtspunkt

* nagle / * dekorativt * mønster * nitte
nittet sammen
* rækværk, gelænder

* genstand for > * opmærksomhed

* fokusere / * motiv
stille skarpt på ng.

* komme frem * hele året rundt

* allergisk * have allergi

* komme i > * berøring med ng.

* substans

* allergisk /
overfølsom overfor ng.

* exotisk
fremmedartet

* have allergi overfor ng. * få >

* allergisk udslæt

* & forvolde ng. ng. * kløende * udslæt

* & pådrage sig / få ng. * hedeudslæt
varmeknopper

* bjergbestiger * klatre op ad > * bjerg

* bestige ng. * erobre > * stejlt (=)
(højt og stejlt)

* bjergbestiger * fastgjort til hinanden

* allergisk overfor ng.

* fedtstoffer

* kulhydrater * fed, overvægtig

* set fra ng. (fra udsigtspunktet)

* fedme * epidemiske * højder / niveauer
overvægtighed

* unddrage sig (at) ngt. * ~ skatteflygtning

* statsborgerskab * opholdstilladelse

* af fødsel * ~ indehaver af > * statsborgerskab

* undersøgt / borger i kongerige * borger

* borger * nye land

* dobbelt * statsborgerskab

* = * nationalitet

* lige så meget som - * ikke kunne lide at -

*

*

* fremstille ng. som ngt.

* ikke bryde sig om det * & samfundssnylter

* intens * voldsom * ubehag
modvilje

* betragte ng. med > * stærk * & antipati
heftig

* have en stærk modvilje mod ngt.

* ubehag, modvilje
antpati

* grænsende til ngt.

* stikke hovedet frem
stå åbent frem

* skælde ud på ng.

* være åbent fremme

* komme åbent frem

* være fyldt til randen af (vrede) * skælde ud

* overhalet af ng.

* overtaget af ngt.

* overtage ngt.

* være overvældet af (tristhed)

* være fuld af (frygt)

* indvending * affærdige ngt.

* berettigede (ng&t.) at -

*

* berettigede ngt.
(& investigation is warranted / justified)

* fejle ngt til side / affærdige ngt.

* blive grebet af (bekymring over ngt.)

* overhalet af begivenhederne

* akut, alvorlig

* søge > * kompensation / erstatning >

* for ngt.

* fejle > tilside / afvise > * ide * som > * dødfødt

* frugtesløs * ineffektiv * dødfødt * urealistisk

418 One year the **volcano** becomes active with a **series** of alarming and **menacing eruptions**.

Although the volcano has been smoking **ominously** in the distance for some time, most people believe it to be a **false alarm** as usual.

All of a sudden the volcano **erupts**.

The volcano is **in eruption**, as an explosion of **ash** suddenly **erupts** from the **crater with a deafening crash**.

Deafened by the loud crash, people **are riveted to the spot**.

10 People **are riveted to the ground** as an immense **volume**

of rocks and **molten lava is erupted** from the volcano at a series of loud **bangs** and **peals**.

As **volcanic ash rains / showers down**, **panic erupts**.

The situation becomes **acute**, and people **erupt**.

People **erupt in(to)** (a) **panic**, and **erupt**, 'God help us'.

As volcanic ash **showers (down) on** everything, a village **is wiped out**.

Fleeing people are **showered with** ash, so many people **are either wiped out**, or **taken critically ill** eE/eA **sick**.

20 The **death toll** is **initially estimated at** around 200, but is later **revised to** 248.

The **asphyxiating, choking, and suffocating poisonous** ash and gasses **make people's eyes smart / sting**,

their **throats burn**, and their skin **erupt in** red spots.

In acute pain as the **fumes** are **choking** them, some people are **choked to death in / on** the fumes while others **suffer (from) acute asphyxiation**.

Many survivors **become / fall / get acutely ill / sick**.

Initially, a **rash erupts** all over their body,

30 In the **initial stage(s)** of their disease,

they suffer from skin **rashes** and **eruptions**

Having **come out in a rash**, some die **covered in rash**.

The press **recount** the **latest developments in** the disaster in the most **graphic / vivid detail**.

Acutely aware / conscious of the dangerous situations, the government **takes emergency action**.

Acutely aware that / conscious that the situation **calls for** immediate action, it holds an **emergency meeting**, and demand **emergency measures**.

* vulkan
* udbrud
* ildevarslen
faretruende
* falsk alarm
* komme i udbrud
* i udbrud
* bryde ud
* krater
* ... øredøvende
* brag
* gøre ng. døv
* være naglet til stedet
* =
* volumen, rumfang
* smeltet
* udsny ngt.
* brag
* bulder
* vulkansk
* aske
* regne ned panik
* bryde ud
* akut, tilspidset
* give følelserne frit løb
* bryde ud i >
* panik
* udbryde
* vælte ned over ngt.
* (være) lagt øde, ødelagt
* overdænge ngt. med ngt.
* blive >
* ~ dræbt
* blive >
* alvorligt
* syg
* døds-
* tal, rate
* først
* anslået / skønnet /
i første omgang
vurderet til x
* revideret til y
* røgforgiftende
* kvælende
* =
* giftig
* få øjnene til at >
* smerte / svie
* (få) halsen / svælget til at brænde
* slå ud med ngt.
* være i akut smertetilstand
* røggasser
* kvæle ng.
have voldsomme smerter
* blive kvalt til døde
* pådrage sig / (lide af) akut røgforgiftning
* blive akut / alvorlig syg
* indledningsvis
* udslæt
* bryde ud
til at begynde med
* i >
* første, begyndende
* stadie (-r) af ngt.
indledende
* (hud-) =
* udslæt af pletter
* få udslæt
* dækket af ...
* berette om >
* ~ den seneste udvikling i >
(katastrofen)
* i >
* malende / levende
* detaljerigdom, ~detaljer
* fuldt ud klar over ngt.
* være sig ngt. fuldt bevidst
* skride til krisehandling
* << at -
* ~ kræve >
* handling
* ~ krisemøde
* nødforanstaltninger

A NEW KING

420 A new king was **crowned in March**.

* krone ng. * i marts

At the **coronation of** a monarch, a **royal crown** is formally placed on the head of a new king or queen,

* kroning (-sceremoni) af ng. * ~ konge- * krone
*

while an **imperial crown** is placed on the head of an emperor.

* kejserkrone

As an **only child**, the **crown prince** had an obvious **claim** to the crown and also an ambition to **come to the throne**.

* enebarn * kronprins * krav >
* på > * & tronen * komme på tronen
kongeværdigheden
*

Before his father's death, the crown prince

had long been **the (real) power behind the throne**.

* den egentlig magt * bag tronen

As (the) **sole heir to the throne**, the new king was

* enearving (til) * tronen
kongeværdigheden

10 **crowned (as)** King of the country.

* krone ... ng. til

At the ceremony, having formally accepted **the crown**,

* & kongeværdigheden

the new King **wore** and **carried the regalia**, the **crown `jewels**.

* være iklædt > * bære på > * rigsregalier * kronjuveler

Wearing the crown and a **ceremonial sword**, he **carried a sceptre** and an **orb** in his hands.

* bære (på) / iklædt ngt. * ceremoniel
* bære på ngt. * scepter * rigssæble

Many of the **crowned heads** of Europe were present.

* kronede hoveder

The cathedral where the coronation took place

*

is the **crown `jewel** and the **crowning glory** of the city.

* pragtstykke / -værk * =
* murværk * top

The **masonry** at the **crown** of the arch of the entrance of the cathedral was **decorated with** a crown made of flowers.

* dekoreret med ngt.

20 **Festoons of lilies and decorative greenery** ran down either **curve**.

* guirlande * lilje * pyntegrønt

As an **exceptional occasion for public ceremonial**, the coronation was the **main event** of the year.

* kurve, bue krumning
* enestående, særlig * lejlighed til > * ceremoniel
* hoved- * begivenhed

The King, representing **the Crown**, regards **the crown** as a symbol of the **unity of the nation** and **national unity**.

* kongemagten * kronen & kongeværdigheden
* nationens enhed * national enhed

Having both political and **ceremonial duties**,

* ceremoniel * pligt

the King is known for his political **zeal** and **unity of purpose**.

* (politisk) iver * målbevidsthed

Being a **literary man** – a **man of letters** –

* ~ litterær / belæst * mand * =

he is known as a **man of light and leading**,

* mand af > * oplysning * ledelse
~ leder- / førerskikkelse

30 and one of the **lights of the age**.

* lys, ~ førende skikkelse * den tids

Leading lights in politics, and their **innovative / <tory writings** have **kindled** the King's **interest** in politics.

* førende skikkelse * nyskabende
* skriverier * (optændt) ~ vakt > * interesse

Although the King is a **shining light**

* strålende * lys, ~ eksempel dygtig person

he **hides his light under a bushel**.

* sætte sit lys under en skæppe (8 gallons)

While the King **makes light of** many of his achievements,

* være ydmyg

he'd never **make light of** a **relationship with** a **future** queen.

* bagatelisere (let) * kærlighedsforhold * kommende

He never **treats** the issue as **trivial** and **unimportant**.

* behandle * trivielt, ligegyldig * uvigtig
- `trivielt - `på-tênt banal, ubetydelig

A LOVERS' MEETING IN A RUSH

421 The King sometimes **amuses himself by** watching

the carriages **unloading** and **loading** (goods) as the men

unload goods and **load** the carriage (**up**) **with empties** (pl).

One day, while the men are **busy unloading** and **loading** (**up**) (the carriages), the King **runs straight into the arms of** the **object of his choice**.

Even as his **eyes alight / light (up)on** a young lady, his **heart beats quick / quickly, quicker** than usual.

As he **alights / lights (up)on** her, his **breathing, heart, 10** and **pulse quicken**; he **feels** his heart **beat(ing) fast**.

Having (**a**)**lighted from a (horse-drawn) coach**, she is **struggling with** a **heavy** suitcase, too **heavy** for her to carry.

The King **fastens** his **eyes on** her face.

His gaze **fastens on** her face **in rapture**.

At first, she's too shy to **meet** his **steadfast gaze**.

Having **made a quick decision** and **touched** her gently **on the arm**, the King **lifts** the suitcase which is **heaviest**.

Even for the King it's **heavy** and difficult to **heave down**.

The young lady takes the suitcase which is **lightest** to carry.

20 The King feels his **heartbeat quickens** as he gives her a **gentle / light tap on** the **shoulder**.

While she **finds it decent of** the King **to** assist her, she **awakens a flood** of tenderness **in him towards** her.

Giving her a **helping hand**, and **pushing a heavy door open**, the King's heart starts to beat **more quickly**.

His heart beats **much quicker**; it beats **faster** and **faster**.

The young lady carries her other suitcase – it's **fairly light** – **light** and easy (for her) to carry.

While the King tries to **fasten** his **attention to** his task,

30 all his **attention fastens on** the young lady.

The **fair** young lady has **light** blue eyes, **fair** hair, and **fair** skin; her head is **crowned with a mop of curls**.

It was late afternoon and the **light** is beginning to **fade**.

Looking at the **dark devastatingly handsome** young man, the young lady just **regard / see** the King **as** a tall and strong, **darkly** handsome stranger **with** a **heavy build**.

He is **heavy-**`**set** but not fat with **dark** skin, long **dark** hair, and **dark** brown eyes, and his **voice** is **light** and pleasant.

* over i huj og hast

* underholde sig ved at -

* losses, blive losset * lastes // blive lastet / læsset (aflæsse ngt.) (på-) læsses (ngt.)

* losse ngt. * laste ngt. med > * tom emballage læsse ngt. af (kasser, flasker og glas)

* travlt beskæftiget med at * losse * laste læsse af læsse på

* løbe lige i armene på ng.

* emne for ngs. valg ng. ngs. udkårne

* i samme øjeblik som * ng's blik falder på ngt.

* hjerte * slå * hurtigt * hurtigere

* få tilfældigt øje på ngt. * åndedræt * hjerte (-slag)

* puls * blive * føle (hjerte) ⇔ at - * slå * hurtigere hurtigere

* stige af ngt. * hestetrucken * karet

* kæmpe med ngt. * tung * =

* fæstne sit blik på ngt.

* ... sig på ngt. * i begejstring henrykt

* møde > * vedholdende > * ~ faste blik

* tage en hurtig beslutning * røre ng. >

* på armen * løfte * tungest hanke op i

* tung * hive / løfte ned

* lettest

* hjerteslag * blive hurtigere

* forsigtigt / let * prik * på skulderen

* finde det > * elskværdigt af ng. at -

* vække > * ~ bølge af (ømhed)

* give ng. en hjælpende hånd * skubbe > * tung * dør

* ~ op * (slå) hurtigere

* meget hurtigerer

* temmelig * let

* =

* fastholde sin opmærksomhed på ngt.

* opmærksomhed * fæstne sig ved

* yndig * lyse- (blå) * lyst (hår)

* lys (hud) * ~ have > på toppen * ~ manke * krøller

* lys * blive svagere

* mørk (-håret / -øjet / -lødet) * kraftfuld * smuk

* betragte / se ng. som ngt.

* mørklødet (smuk) * ~ af kraftigt bygning

* kraftig * mørk (hud) * = (hår)

* = * stemme * dæmpet

422 The King **goes into raptures over** the young lady.

Being in raptures about his **luck**, he is **struck by** an **idea**.

His **heart jolts** as he invites her to **join him for a walk**.

A **wee bit** confused she answers (that) she will **join** him

in an **hour** so the King must **wait** her **convenience**.

' **Will you wait - will you wait for me ?** ' she asks,

' Will you **wait for me to change** and **clean** (myself) **up ?** '

Being in raptures, the King gladly agrees to **wait an hour**.

So he **waits for** an hour, and his **patience** is **rewarded**.

10 There's a **soft gleam / light** in her **eyes**.

His **eyes gleam / shine with** happiness as he looks at her.

She wears **light** summer clothes **trimmed** with **lace**,

and **light comfortable** shoes, all of it in **light** colours.

She **brings** a **light** sweater in **case** the evening is **chilly**.

The King wears a **lightweight** jacket.

In the **west** the sun **goes down / sets**, and **darkness falls**.

The **air** is **heavy with** the **scent** of flowers.

The **air** is **filled with** the **heavy scent** of wild flowers.

Night is **falling**, and it's beginning to **get dark**.

20 In the **fading light** of (the) **summer evening**,

they can just **make out the shape** of **all sorts of things**.

The **evening sky** is **darkening** as the **gloom** is **gathering**.

Joining hands with her, the King holds her hand **firmly**.

Joining hands, they both feel very happy.

As the **clouds thin** and the moon **shines through**,

he **links** his **arm through / in** hers.

Linking arms with her, he'll **walks with** her, **linking arms**.

So strolling **alternately hand in hand** and **linking arms**,

they **go for a walk by moonlight**.

30 Walking **arm in arm**, their **way is lit by** the **full moon**.

Their eyes **gleam** (white) in the dark.

Scattered clouds drift / float across the moon.

The black **night sky** is filled / **scattered with** stars.

Now and then a **cloud obscures** and **darkens** the moon.

Every time the moon **goes behind** (a) **light cloud**,

the night **darkens**; it **gets** more or less **darker**.

Once in a while (a) **dark heavy cloud hides** the moon

For a short while they **wander about in the dark**

without the moon to **light** their **way**.

* blive vildt begejstret / henrykt over ng&t.

* være - - - * (blive) ramt af > * ide
~ en ide slog ned i ng.

* hjerte * ~ banke * slutte sig til / * på en spadseretur
følges med ng.

* lille smule * - = -

* om > * (en) time * vente til det passer /
er belejligt for ng.

* vente * ... på ng.

* vente på at ng. * skifte * gøre sig i stand
vaske sig

* fuld af begejstring / * vente > * en time
henrykkelse

* vente i ... * tålmodighed * belønnes

* blidt / mildt udtryk i ngs øjne

* øjne > * stråle med ngt.

* let (klæder) * pyntet (med) > * blonde
knipling

* lette * behagelige (sko) * lyse (farver)

* medbringe > * let (trøje) * i det tilfælde (at) - * kølig
~ hvis nu

* letvægt

* i vest * mørket * falder på

* luften * tung af > * duft af ngt.

* = * fuld af > * tung * - = -

* natten > * falde på * blive mørkt

* i > * aftagende > * lys * sommer- * aften

* danne sig et omrids af > * alle slags * ting og sager

* aftenhimmel * blive mørkere * mørket > * ~ falder på

* tage ngs. hånd * fast

* tage hinandens hånd

* ~ skydækket aftager * skinne igennem

* ~ tage ng. under armen

* gå sammen med ng. arm i arm

* skiftevis * hånd i hånd * holde hinanden under armen

* ~ gå tur i måneskinnet
/ måneskinstur

* arm i arm * lyse vej ⇔ * fuldmåne

* skinne svagt (hvide)

* spredte * skyer * drive / ~ sejle hen over ngt.

* natte- * himmel * overstrøet med ngt.

* sky * dække for / * formørke (månen)
skjule / formørke >

* gå bag * let * sky /
-dække

* formørkes * blive (mere eller mindre) mørkere
blive mørkere

* mørk * tung * skydække * dække for /
(sky) skjule ngt.

* vandre (omkring) * i mørke / blinde

* lyse (ng.) > * vej

~ lyse vej for ng.

423 Having seen a shooting`star speeding across the sky ,	* ~ stjernes kud	* fare >	* hen over	* himlen
the King makes a wish before he turns around	* ~ foretage			* et ønske
and takes the young lady in his arms .	* tage ng. >			* i sine arme
By the light of the silvery orb of the moon,	* i skæret fra >	* sølvskinnende		* kugle
he admires her beautiful face and her light hair piled high	* lys			* sætte op
on the crown of her head.	* på toppen af (hovedet)			
Holding her in his arms , the King ventures to give her	* holde ng. i sine arme		* driste sig til at -	
a light and gentle kiss on the cheek .	* let (kys)	* forsigtig ...	* på kinden	* i al uskyldighed
He dares to kiss her lightly on the cheek in all innocence .	* driste sig til at -	* kysse ng.	* let på ...	* i al uskyldighed
10 Having exchanged amorous glances , they kiss each	* udveksle >	* forelskede	* blikke	* kysse ng. >
other on the mouth , first gently then passionately .	* på >	* munden	* blidt	* lidenskabeligt
As they turn (their face) towards home ,	* vende (næsen / snuden)			hjemad
he puts his arm around her instead of holding her hand .	* lægge armen omkring ng.		* ~ holde ng. i hånden	
With great relish she feels his arm go / going round her.	* med stort velbehag		* mærke ngs. arm >	komme omkring sig
When she suddenly feels something irritating in her shoe,	*			
the young lady fastens her hand on the king's arm.	* holde hånden fast i ng.			
She wears a pair of `lace-ups (eE); a pair of lace-up shoes.	* gå med / have > på			* snøresko
She's got shoes with lace fasteners / fastenings .	* snørebinding / -lukke			
Her shoes fasten with (shoe>) laces .	* bindes			* snørebånd
20 Her hand fastens on his arm as she unlaces her shoe.	* holde fast i			* binde / snøre op
Having unfastened her shoe she turns it upside down	* løsne > // binde / snøre (sko) op			
and shakes it to remove a pebble .	* småsten			
She puts on her shoe and bends down to fasten it.	* binde / snøre ng.			
She ties her (shoe>) laces /A& shoestrings firmly.	* snørebånd			
If your laces become undone you might trip over .	* gå op			* snuble
Having laced (up) her shoe, she takes the King by the hand .	* snøre ng.	* tage ng. >		* ~ i hånden
Taking up their walk , they once again stroll hand in hand.	* genoptage	* spadseretur		* spadserer
Going on with their homeward stroll ,	* fortsætte med ng.		* hjem-	* =
they walk with their fingers laced .	* med fingerne flettet		~ spadseretur hjemad	
30 They lace their conversation is with witty asides .	* sammenknytte ng. >	* med >	* åndfuld	* side-
Home again after a wonderful summer's day / evening ,	* ~ indflette ng.		vittig	bemærkning
the King fastens his arms (a)round her waist .	* sommer-			* dag / aften
Having folded her in his arms and kissed her goodnight ,	* holde (arm) omkring >			* talje
the King suddenly comes to think of tomorrow .	* holde armene omkring ng.	* kysse ng. >		* godnat
' Will you join me for lunch ? ' he asks in a rapturous tone	* gøre ng. med ng.			* begejstret /
when it suddenly occured to him to ask her.	* ~ spise frokost med mig			henrykt (tonefald)
Throwing / fastening her arms (a)round his neck ,	* falde ng. ind at -			
she accepts his invitation with rapture , while the King	* kaste / ~ lægge >	* ~ armene om halsen på ng.		
hardly dares to believe he has captured her heart .	* ~ sige ja til >	* invitation		* med begejstring /
	* næppe	* at turde at -		henrykkelse
	~ knap nok tør (tro at -)			* erobre >
				* hjerte

424 The King **relates** / **narrates** his childhood experiences.

Relating his youth experiences **to** his **intended** wife,

he **relates that** they have been troublesome.

He **relates what** happened, **relates who** were involved
and **relates where** and **when** it all happened.

When the King was a **babe in arms**,
he used to **wake (up)** at first **light**,
and **wake (up)** his mother always **fast asleep**.

So he used to **wake** his mother **(up)** in the **early hours**.

10 He had **woken (up)**, and **woken ()** his mother **(up)** early.

Waking (up) from a **deep** and **heavy sleep**,
and being a **deep** and **heavy sleeper**,
his mother used to be quite **grumpy** in the **morning**.

So as he usually **woke (up)** in the **small hours**,
and **woke ()** his mother **(up)** in the **wee (small) hours**,
he had been taken care of by a **wet nurse**.

The wet nurse, a **light sleeper**, was employed to give
her **breast milk** to the little prince, and **lull** him **to sleep**.

Having **breast-fed** the baby, she had **rocked**
20 and **song** him **to sleep** to the **strains** of a **lullaby**.

As he used to **fall asleep** in the nurse's **arms** after his **feed**,
she had put the **sleeping** prince gently down in his cradle.

Fast asleep, **sleeping deeply** and **peacefully** in his cradle,
the little prince soon **slept through** the **night**.

His mother herself had found some **light work to do**.

Usually **waking (up)** from a **light sleep**, the wet nurse
had **woken (up)** to a baby **fresh from a good night's sleep**.

One morning the prince **woke up** to **find** his wet nurse **gone**,
and been replaced by a new **nursemaid** (o-f).

30 Even being a young boy, he had to **wake up to** reality,
and accept his new **nanny**.

When he then **woke (up)** in the **wee small hours**,
he had **woken () up** his nanny by **pulling** her arm **with a jerk**.

Sometimes in his sleep, he has sat up **with a jerk** or a **jolt**
(**of dread**), and **jerked () out** a few anxious words.

Having **jerked** and **jolted** the child **awake**,
the nanny has **woken** him **out of** his nightmare.

He had been **relieved** to **wake from** his **dread** (<ed) dream.

* fortælle (om) ngt.

* ... ngt. til ng.

* påtænkt (hustru)

* berette / fortælle at -

* ... hvad -

* ... hvor / hvornår

* ~ baby, der endnu ikke kan gå

* vågne

* ~ ved dag gry
så snart det er lyst
* sovende fast

* vække ng.

* vække ng.

* vågnet (op)

* vækket ng.

* vågne op af >

* dyb

* tung

* person, der sover dybt / tungt

* gnaven, sur

~ morgensur / -gnaven

* om morgenen

* vågnede

* ~ tidligt om morgenen

* vække ng.

* - - -

* ~ amme

* person, der sover let

* brystmælk

* lulle ng. >

* i søvn

* give bryst

* rokke, ~ vugge >

* synge ng. >

* i søvn

* til tonerne af >

* vuggevis

* falde i søvn

* i ngs. arme

* ~ (babys) måltid mælk

* sovende

* ... tungt

* fredeligt

* sove igennem >

~ sove igennem

* natten

* let

* arbejde

* at lave / udføre

* vågne fra / af ngt.

* let søvn

* vågne op til ngt.

* frisk >

* ~ efter en god nats søvn

* vågne op og -

* finde ng.

* ~ forsvundet

* barnepige / -plejerske

* vågne op til / få øjnene op for /
blive klar over / indse ngt.

* barnepige

* vågne

* tidlig om morgenen

* vækkede ng.

* trække ngt. med >

* ryk

* med >

* et ryk / sæt

* rysten

* (af angst / skræk)

* nervøst udstøde (nervøse ord)

* rykke ng.

* ryste ng.

* vågen

* vække ng. af ngt.

* lettet over at - * vågne fra ngt.

* skrækindjagende
skræmmende (drøm)

425 As a child, the King still used to **waken (up)** early,
and **waken** his nanny (**up**) when it was just **getting light**.

One morning he had **wakened (up)** as usual as soon as
it was light, and **wakened** his nanny (**up**).

He **wakened up to** realize that a **memory** had **wakened**;
a dream had **awakened** a forgotten **memory**.

Sometimes when he **awoke** early, he started to play
silently by himself before he **awoke** his **sleeping** nanny.

The nanny who **awoke from** deep sleep,
10 awoke to the sound of a **joyful** and **playful** boy.

Feeling **light-hearted** and **gay** (o-f), she **awoke to** find him
- `ha~tid
wrapped up / absorbed / engrossed in playing.
in`grêust

Some dreams **are bound to awake emotions**;
bound to **awake** happiness, sadness, love, **hatred(s)**,
friendliness, hostility, fear, **hate** etc.

Judging by / to judge from his dreams,
old emotions and **acute / strong** feelings **awoke**.

It's important to **awake to** the danger of **sentimentality**.
A member of the ruling class must **be awake to** the danger
20 of being too **sentimental** and **indulge in sentimentalism**.

As a young man, the King usually had to **awaken** early
as his **valet** had a **standing** order to **awaken** him early.

So the young man **had** usually **awakened** quite early
when his valet **had awakened** him in the morning.

The valet, **bald** on the **crown** of his head,
had spent all his **waking hours caring for** the prince.

Sometimes the valet was finding it hard to **stay awake**.
As soon as the prince was around, though,

he **was (all) sweetness and `light**.

'Come on, **lighten up** ! ' the valet used to say
30 when the prince's **mood** needed to **lighten (up)**.

The valet sometimes **figures** (that) if he tells
a **delicious joke**, it will **lighten** the prince's **mood (up)**,
and **lighten** the **conversation (up)**.

Even if it was sometimes a **poor, feeble** or **weak joke**,
the prince's mood and conversation used to **lighten (up)**,
for (o-f / poet.) the valet was **held in deep affection**
by the prince.

* vågne
* vække ng. * blive lyst
* vågne
* være lyst * vække ng.
* vågne op til at - * minde > * være vakt til live
* (havde) vækket > * minde
~ vakt (et minde) til live
* vågne (norm. kun datid)
* vække ng. * sovende
* vågne af ng.
* vågne til ng. * munter * =
* munter * = * vågne op og -
* optaget / opslugt af at -
* ~ vil uvilkårligt gøre ng. * vække følelser
* = * had (mod ng&t. bestemt)
* * = (i al almindelighed)
* at dømme ud fra ng.
* stærk * vågne
* få øjnene op for / * sentimentalitet
blive klar over ng.
* vågen /
på vagt overfor ng.
* sentimental * hengive sig til ng. * sentimentalisme
* vågne
* kammertjener * stående / * vække ng.
~ vedvarende (ordre)
* vågne
* vække ng.
* skaldet * top
* vågne tid * tage sig af / bekynre sig om ng.
* holde sig vågen
*
* rar og venlig (til en forandring)
* op med humøret
* humør > * ~ komme i vejret
* forestille sig / regne med at -
* fornøjelig > * vittighed * lette > * humør
* lette > * samtale
* dårlig / tyndbenet * vittighed
* (humør / samtale) lettes
* fordi - * ~ være afholdt / elsket >
* af ng.

426 The prince had been **awakened** to take his turn in the **day-to-day** work.

So he **awakened** to take his turn in **the day's work**.

Awakening from a good night's sleep, the young prince used to **awaken light-`heartedly** to a secure everyday life.

'Things will be fine,' he used to say **lightly**.

Soon, however, he **found out / learnt** to his **cost** that it's **indeed** not **(all) sweetness and `light** being a prince.

A disaster was **waiting to `happen**.

10

One morning, as someone was **knocking at / on** his **door**, a **loud knock at / on** the door **brought** him **fully awake**.

The sound of **loud knocking** and **heavy footsteps** **brought** him **wide awake**.

A **nasty** surprise **awaited** him.

A terrible surprise was **waited** him outside the door.

He **was in for** a dramatic and painful surprise.

It was **bedlam** when he **awakened** to some bad news.
`bedlēm

Having a **rude awakening**, he **awakened** to find out,

20 and **be informed that** his elder brother, the **crown prince**, had been **assassinated**.

ê`sasineitid
The news **hit** him **like a thunderbolt**.

It **jolted** him (**out of** his mind with dismay).

He had a very **close relationship** with his brother.

His brother had always **gone out on** a **limb** to help him.

The turmoil **kept** everyone **awake**.

Despair **was in the air**; it **hung heavy in the air**.

The prince had **clung to the hope** that the whole affair was a **bad joke**.

30 It was **with** a **heavy `heart** that **relatives** and friends had met **at** the **wake** before and after the burial to **remember / commemorate the departed / the deceased**.

Relations and friends, all of them **with** a **broken heart**, had been walking **heavily**, (keeping) their **heads down**, and once in a while letting out a **moan** or **groan of** sadness.

No one had **in** their **wildest dreams** imagined the fate **in store** (**for** him); it had **broken** their **hearts**.

No one **could possibly imagine** what had **`happen to** him; what ill fate, accident, or disaster had **waited** him.

* blive vække for at -

* daglig

* vågne ...

* dagens ... / dont

* vågne efter

* ... til

* muntert
sorgløst

* henkastet

* finde ud af / lære af bitter erfaring at -

~ måtte sande at -

* så sandelig

* den rene svir

* ~ ligge og lure

*

* banke på >

* døren

* højt / kraftigt bank på ...

* gøre ng. lysvågen

* høj (lydt)

* banken

* tung

* fodtrin

* <<

* slem, væmmelig (overraskelse)

* vente på ng.

* =

* have ngt. i vente

* som et galehus
kaos

* vågne op til ngt.

* få en brat opvågning

* ~ vågne og -

* blive informeret (om) at -

* kronprins

* snigmyrde

* ramme ng.

* som en tordenkile

~ komme som et chok

* ryste ng.

(* ude af sig selv > * af forfærdelse)

(~ bringe ng. >)

* tæt forhold til ng.

* ~ løbe en risiko for at -

(gå ud på en gren)

* holde ng. vågen

* ~ der er en atmosfære /
stemning af (desperation)

* ~ der herskede en tung
= / = af (=)

* klynge sig til håbet (om) at -

* en dårlig vittighed

* med tungt hjerte

* familiemedlem

* vågeperiode / -nat
gravøl

* mindes ng.

* mindes ng.

* den afdøde

* familiemedlem

* med >

* knust

* hjerte

* med tunge (sørgmodige) skridt

* med bøjet hoved

* jammer

* støn af (sorg)

* i ens vildeste fantasi

* der venter / ventede (på ng.)

* knuse >

* hjerte

* & have fantasi til at forestille sig

* sket for / med ng.

* vente ng.

427 Made to carry a heavy load , the coffin eE/eA casket	* tung	* byrde	* kiste
had eight handles to spread the load along the coffin.	* fordele >	* & vægt	* langs ngt.
Eight men carried the coffin to spread the burden / weight .	* fordele >		* byrde / & tyngde
Many people at the funeral service wore black armbands .	* armbind		
The crown prince's death lay heavy on their heart .	* hvile ng. tungt om hjertet		
The wake awoke a flood of unexpected tenderness	* vågning	* vække	* ømhed
towards both the quick and the dead .	* levende og døde		
Old feelings and emotions awoke as the departed	* vågne		
was laid to sleep in the narrow bed .	* stede ng. til hvile ~ begrave ng.		* graven
10 The funeral eventually awakened the young prince to	* få ng. til at få øjnen op for / / blive klar over / indse at -		
the realization that his brother had died	* erkendelse af at -		
He realized he'd never been serious about the fact that	* seriøs omkring det faktum at - tage det alvorligt at -		
he'd be crown prince in the event of his brother's death,	* i tilfælde af ngt.		
and then king in the event that his father passed away.	* i det tilfælde at -		
Having gone to rest / bed / sleep quite late the next night,	* gå til hvile / i seng		
and put out the candle , the prince couldn't fall asleep .	* slukke >	* tælle- / stearinlys	* falde i søvn
Having put out the light , he just lay there in the dark .	* ... >	* lyset	* i mørket
He couldn't get to sleep – he lay wakeful all night.	* falde i søvn		* vågen søvnløs
Lying sleepless , he didn't sleep a wink .	* ligge >	* søvnløs	* ikke sove et øjeblik
20 Lying restless , he didn't get a wink of sleep .	* ... >	* hvileløs	* ikke få et øjeblik søvn
Having spent a sleepless and restless night,	* tilbringe	* søvnløs >	* hvileløs (nat)
without (having had) a wink of sleep	* et øjeblik søvn		
his eyes were red through lack of sleep .	* (på grund) af >		* mangel på søvn
His darkest fears were confirmed .	* ngs. dystreste anelser bliver bekræftet & det ng. mest frygter sker		
His worst fears were confirmed; for some unknown reason	* værste ...	* af (en eller anden) ukendt >	* årsag grund
his brother had sought out that fabled / storied place	* opsøge og finde ngt.		* sagnomspunden
where so many dark deeds had been committed.	* skumle gerninger		
Was the assasination a foretaste of what was to come ?	* snigmord	* forsmag på ngt.	* være i vente
His brother had been known for his dark humour	* sort humor		
30 common in difficult situations.	*		
Maybe his black humor had been a cover-up	* <<		* dække over
hiding a load of trouble and a dark vision of the future ?	* bunke (problemer)	* dystre	* vision om / syn på (fremtiden)
Had a darker side to his character / nature made him	* mørkere side af (~ personlighed)		
soil his hands and reputation with some shady business ?	* tilsmudse >	* hænder	* omdømme * med (skummelt gøremål)
For some time the prince had a love-hate relationship	* had-kærlighedsforhold >		
with his departed brother – had someone been betrayed ?	* til ng.	* afdød (bror)	* forrådt
Once in a while the new crown prince felt a great sense of	* have en stærk følelse af >		
betrayal – but who was the real betrayer after all .	* forræderi egentlig	* virkelig	* forræder * i sidste ende egentlig

428 Had his brother, or anything, or any situation been

an **acciden** / a **disaster waiting to happen** ?

His departed brother was **under a cloud (of suspicion)**.

His brother, and the **name / reputation** he left behind him
kept **having a cloud of suspesion hanging over** them.

Suspicion **clouded** the new crown prince's **face**,
and doubts were beginning to **cloud** his mind.

Sadness mixed with anger and worries **clouded** his **brow**.
His face **clouded (over) with** anger, sadness and worry.

10 His **judgement** was **clouded** by worries.

For some time his brother's face **haunted** him
not only in his dreams and the **dreamlike** state

between **waking** and **sleeping** but also haunted him all
his **waking life**, every **waking day** and **waking moment**.

The prince's face **darkened** every time he thought about
the **contemptible / detestable assassin** who had committed

the **despicable assassination** of his brother.
di`spikêbêl / `despi -

Deep melancholy **clouded** his **features**.
`melêkêli

It was **agony** not knowing the **true facts of the case**.

20 Not knowing the **truth of a matter prolongs** the **agony**.

The new crown prince had tried to **reconstruct**

the **sequence of events** which had **led up to** the **tragic event**.
`si~kwens

Could he have **changed** the **course of events** ?

Unable to **let sleeping dogs lie**, he came upon some **facts**,
plain to see, that **showed** his brother in a **in another light**.

A **clear / plain fact is that** having **kept** it very **secret**

/E& **dark**, his brother had had an **obscure** mission to carry out,

and had **consorted with** people **harbouring sinister designs**.

The **clear / plain fact is that** as his younger brother,

30 the new crown prince had been as much **in the dark**
as everyone else although he'd always thought

they **had** no **dark secrets from** each other.

It's been a **breach of confidence, plain and simple**.

Everyone had been **kept in the dark about** his brother's
intentions to **accomplish** a secret plan.

Suddenly **seeing** matters in a **new light**,

the new crown prince came to **see** his brother **different light**.

Many facts will probably never **see the light (of day)**.

*

* **idm**: ulykke / katastrofe * ligge og lure
~ en tikkende bombe

* under mistanke, ~ i unåde

* ~ eftermæle

* have > * en mistanke hængende over ngt.

* formørke ngt.

* formørke / -plumre ngt.

* formørkede ngt.

* pande

* formørkes af ngt.

* dømmekraft

* forplumret

* hjem søge /
forfølge / plage ng.
* drømmeagtig

* opvågning

* søvn

* vågne ...

* formørkes af vrede

* foragtelig

* snigmorder

* afskyelig

* snigmord

* formørke >

* ansigtstræk

* (en) lidelse * sand * kendsgening * sag
pine (~ sags rette sammenhæng)
* sandheden i ngt. * sag * forlænge ngt. * =
(~ en sags rette ...) (~ trække pinen i langdrag)
* rekonstruere >

* række af > * begivenheder * ført op til > * tragisk ...

* forandre begivenhedernes gang

* ~ ikke rippe op i fortiden

* kendsgerninger

* simple at >

* forstå

* vise ng. >

* i et andet lys

* klar >

* kendsgerning er at -

* holde det (meget)

hemmeligt / skjult

* ~ skjult

* ~ tilsløret, ukendt

* omgås med ng.

* nære >

* skumle * planer

pleje omgang med ng.

* (det klare) faktum er at -

* ~ (være) i uvidenhed

*

* have >

* ~ dystre

* hemmeligheder overfor ng.

* ~ tillidsbrud

* ~ simpelt hen

* holde ng. i uvidenhed om

* fuldføre ngt.

* se (sagen)

* i et nyt lys

* .. (ng.) ...

* se dagens lys
komme for en dag

429 As probably the most tragic incident in the King's life ,	* hændelse >	* i ngs. liv
the loss of his brother had cast a blight on his youth.	* kaste >	* plantesygdom på ngt.
Casting a cloud over his youth, it had blighted his youth.	~ bringe fordærv over ngt. * kaste en (mørk) skygge over ngt. * ~ fordærve ngt.	
It was a tragedy that darkened his otherwise carefree youth.	* formørke ngt.	* bekymringsfri
He'll never forget the terrible events of that period.	* forfærdelig begivenhed	
The death of his brother, and the prospect of becoming	*	
heir to the throne had burdened the prince (with worry).	* bebyrde ng.	* med ngt.
He had burdened himself with too many worries.	* ... sig med ngt.	
Suspicion and doubt had loaded the prince down .	* overbebyrde / tvinge ng. i knæ	
10 Worries had loaded down the prince.	* =	
The prince felt loaded down by / with worries.	* overbebyrdet af ngt.	
Weighed with worries, he felt left out on a limb .	* =	* ~ overladt til sin egen skæbne (ude på en gren)
Weighed down by worries, he felt out on a limb .	* =	
The young prince only gradually awakened to the fact that	* vågne op til >	* det faktum / den kendsgerning at -
he was now the heir to the crown / throne .	* arving til >	* kronen / tronen
He'd had to face in earnest that the main burden of	* for alvor	* hoved- * byrden
ruling the monarchy would fall (up)on him as the future king.	* ved at -	~ den største belastning >
Having to carry a heavy burden / load of responsibility,	* bære >	* tung byrde af (ansvar)
he'd have to bear a heavy burden / load of responsibility.	* - = -	
20 Being a crown prince was a heavy burden / load	* tung byrde / voldsom belastning	
(for the young prince) to carry / bear .	* at bære / udholde	
If unable to bear the burden / load of responsibility,	* bære / udholde byrden af (ansvar)	
he'd never be able to bear the burden / load of being a king.	* & klare belastningen	
' I try to wipe () out / erase the memory of the sad episodes,	* bortviske	* mindet om ngt.
I try to wipe / erase these episodes from my mind / memory ,	* ~ viske ngt. bort fra >	* sindet / hukommelsen
but you can never wipe out / erase the past ,' the prince had	* bortviske >	* fortiden
sighed heavily .	* sukke	* dybt, tungt
He often retired to his den to sit in gloomy / glum silence ,	* et mindre rum, hvor man	langsomt og sørgmodigt
or he sought refugee in their old gloomy den in the woods	kan være sig selv	* tungsindig * stilhed
30 and sat staring gloomily / glumly into the air .	* søge tilflugt i >	* mørk, trist * hemmelig legehule
He had many rough nights ; spending many wakeful nights,	* trist	
he spent many sleepless nights in agony .	* urolig	* vågne (nætter)
Chronic sleeplessness is called insomnia .	* søvnløse (nætter)	* i fysisk / psykisk smerte
He desperately needed to get some sleep .	* kronisk	~ forpint af sjælskvaler
Even if counting sheep and doing everything else	* få noget søvn	* -hed
to fall asleep , he spent half the night trying to get to sleep .	* falde i søvn	
Eventually having fallen into a fitful and uneasy sleep ,	* =	* =
he slept fitfully and uneasily disturbed by nightmares,	* falde i en >	* periodevis * urolig * søvn
and woke up under a cloud of gloom and despair.	* sove * periodevis uroligt	uafslappet (periode)
	* ~ tynget af ngt.	* uroligt * forstyrre / uafslappet forurolige ng.
		* mismod

430 His poor physical condition was a result / consequence of *

the close **relationship between** mental and physical health.

Fitful and **uneasy sleep** worsened his **anxiety**,

He often **cried aloud** in his **sleep**.

He spend many nights **sleeplessly** **pacing** the **floor**.

His walking **sleepless** (pred.) up and down the floor

darkened his **mood** and **deepened** his **gloom** alarmingly.

He didn't **get** much **sleep** or didn't **get** any **sleep** at all.

His **mood** **darkened** and his **gloom** **deepened** at the worry.

10 As **lack of sleep** `aggravated an **emergent depression**,

he **sank** further and further **into dark depression**.

Suffering from a **severe deep depression**,

he **lived through** the **darkest days** of his youth.

He had **relived** a childish fear of **the dark**.
ri`livd

Afraid that his eyes couldn't **penetrate** the darkness / gloom, *

he was afraid of **the dark**; so he only stayed out **until dark**,

took care to be home **before dark**, and didn't go out **after dark**.

If he **woke up at night**, he **felt uneasy about** (imagining)
ûn`i~si

the darkness of the windows behind the curtains.

20 Even if a **light** was **burning** in the prince's room all night,

the **darkened** windows appeared **darkly sinister**.

Oddly enough, during the day in the **dark** winter days,

he sought isolation in a **dark** and quiet room full of

heavy furniture surrounded by walls **painted in dark colours**

and **wainscots** (o-f) in **dark-coloured** wood.

Although his valet tried everything to **lighten** his **mood (up)**,
the prince's mood didn't **lighten (up)**.

He felt **in the power of** the **dark forces** of his imagination
as if **in the mercy** of the **dark forces** of the universe.

30 He felt haunted by **the forces** and **powers of darkness**.

To **crown it all**, a candle had **set** a curtain **on fire**;

it had **set** `fire /eE `light to / **ignited** a **lace** curtain.
ig`naitid

The candle had **set** a curtain **alight**, and as the curtain

was alight, some **woodwork** had **caught alight**.

So the room was soon filled with a **haze** of smoke.

Luckily, the **fire** had been **put out** / **stopped burning**

but the prince had been **overcome by the smoke**.

The rescuer had **wondered** (**that**) the prince had survived.

* forhold mellem ngt.

* urolig * uafslappet * søvn * forværre > * uro
bekymring
* råbe højt * i søvne

* søvnløst * ~ gå op og ned ad > * gulvet
~ på søvnløs maner
* søvnløs

* formørke > * humør * ~ forværre / * sindsformørkelse
forstærke > mismod

* få ... søvn

* mismod > * forværres / forstærkes

* forværre ngt. * ~ spirende * depression

* synke > * ~ (længere og ...) ned i > * dyb / svær ...

* lide af > * svær * dyb * =

* ~ gennemleve * mørkeste * dage, ~ periode

* genopleve ngt. * mørket

* (øjne) trænge gennem (mørket)

* & mørkerød

* før mørkets frembrud

* efter ...

* vågne op om natten

* føle sig utilpas / urolig
/ uhyggelig til mode ved ngt.

*

* lys

* brænde

* mørkblevne * mørk, dyster
truende

* ildevarslede, dyster
skummel, uhyggelig
* mørk (dag)

* mækeligt nok

* mørkt (rum)

* tunge (møbler) * malet i /
bemalet med >

* mørke * farver

* vægpanel

* mørkfarvet

* lette ngs. sindsstemning
bringe ng. i bedre humøret
* lette

* i ngs. vold

* mørke magter

* =

* =

* mørkets / onde magter

* oven i det hele

* sætte ngt. brand

* sætte ild til /
antænde ngt.

* knibling

* sætte ild i / til
/ i brand

* stå i brand / flammer

* træværk

* gå i brand

* tåge

* ild >

* ~ blive slukket

* ~ få røgforgiftning

* undre sig over at -

431 Although the smoke had **asphyxiated** the prince,
he soon regained consciousness and escaped death.

Dizzy after the **asphyxiation**, he was feeling **light-`headed**;
unable to **think clearly** and **move steadily**.

The prince was **ailing** (o-f) for weeks.

The **`after-effects** of the **asphyxia** kept **ailing** him.

When someone is depressed, physical **sickness**
puts an extra load on the victim.

The **extra load of** physical **illness** worsened the situation.

10 For a long time he had suffered from **light-`headedness**
and other **minor ailments**.

His long **illness** was a **heavy burden** to **bear / carry**.

It was a **heavy load** to **bear / carry**.

All the **agony / <ies** of his brother's death had **aged** him.

His brother's death was a **millstone (a)round** his **neck**.

The **future** had long **looked depressing / gloomy**.

To the prince, life had felt like a **continuous / uninterrupted**
series of cloudy and gloomy days.

The **father-son relationship** is an important factor.

20 **Father-son relations** are very important.

The prince **had** quite a good **relationship with** his father.

Hoping there **was light at the end of the tunnel**, the King
put all his energy into lightening the atmosphere (**up**).

Trying to **lighten** his son's **cares and worries**,
the King tried to **lighten** his son's **mood / spirits (up)**.

'Even in the **darkest moments**, I still have you, my son,
and **every cloud has a silver lining**,' he said **encouragingly**.

'I suppose so,' the prince answered **heavily**.

Catching the **glimmer(ing) of a smile in** his son's **eyes**,
30 the King **sensed a gleam / glimmer(ing) of hope**.

For a change, a few glasses of beer or wine
made the crown prince feel **light-hearted** and more optimistic.

Back in a **light-hearted mood** it might happen that he had
a glass too many – **these things happen** – and began to
feel **light-`headed**.

Light-`headedness had turned into **light-`headedness**.

The alcohol finally **made** him **sleepy / drowsy**
and **sent him to sleep**, quite **loaded** (pred.).

* kvæle ng. af iltmangel
røg- / gasforgifte ng. (så de besvimer og evt. dør)

* røgforgiftning
* tænke > * klart * bevæge sig > * ør i hovedet
uklar, svimmel
* ~ med jævne
bevægelser

* være syg

* eftervirkning * kvælningstilstand * gøre ng. syg

* sygdom

* lægge en ekstra byrde på

* =

* svimmelhed

* mindre alvorlige sygdomme

* sygdomstilstand * tung byrde at bære
voldsom belastning at udholde

* =

* lidelse * få ng. til at føle sig /
fysisk / psykisk smerte virke ældre
* en møllesten om hans hals, ~ et tyngende problem

* fremtiden > * se > * mørk / dyster / trist ud

* fortsat / uafbrudt

* ~ række * skyede * triste * dage

* ... relation / forhold

* =

* have > * ~ (godt) forhold til ng.

* lys for enden af tunnelen

* lægge > * energi ind i at - * løfte (stemningen)

* lette > * bekymringer * =

* løfte > * humør / =
~ få ng. op med humøret

* mørkeste * stunder

* oven over skyerne er himmelen altid blå

* tungt, ~ langsomt og sørgmodigt

* ~ antydningen af et smil i ng's øjne

* ane / fornemme ng. * glimt af > * håb

* til en forandring

* let om hjertet
munter, sorgløs

* i godt humør

* det er, hvad der kan ske

* svimmel, ør
uklar

* munter- / * svimmel- / ør-
sorgløshed uklarhed

* gøre ng. søvnig / døsigt

* få ng. til at falde i søvn * beruset
fuld

432 In the morning the valet left him to sleep it off .	* sove den ud	
He slept solidly for ten hours.	* i træk	
If not yet a sound sleeper , the alcohol for once made him	* sund	* sover
into a solid sleeper , having slept the day away .	~ person, der har en sund søvn	
	* stabil ...	* sove (dagen) bort
Having slept right through all kinds of everyday noise,	* sove fra ngf.	
he had eventually slept ()` off his hangover	* sove > væk	* tømmermænd
even though he feels a bit fragile (E) after last night.	* ~ ømskindet, skidt tilpas	
Normally he couldn't sleep because of the noise.	* sove	
As he was told he'd got sleep in his eyes ,	* have søvn i >	* øjnene
10 he rubbed the sleep from the corner of his eyes .	* gnide ... væk fra >	* øjenkrogene
Finally beginning to see the light at the end of the tunnel	* se lyset for enden af tunellen	
the King, who was in poor health , succeeded to	* være i dårlig helbredstilstand	
awaken his son to his responsibility as a crown prince.	skranke	
	* få ng. til at få øjnene op for	
The prince's depression seemed to be lifting at last.	/ indse	
	* depression >	* lette
A bad dream might still awaken terrible memories and fears.	* vække (vakte, vakt) ngf.	
So terrible memories, and fear for the future might awaken .	* frygt for (fremtiden)	* vågne, ~ dukke op
Occasionally, he lay awake at night worrying, by turns	* ligge vågen	
drifting into a light doze and waking up from a light sleep	* glide ind i > * let døs * vågne op af * let søvn	
Worrying over the future, he lay awake half the night ,	* <<	* den halve nat
20 trying to go back to sleep and get back to sleep .	* ~ falde i søvn igen	* =
Light-`headed , dizzy as during a fever,	* svimmel	
he wasn't sure whether he was half awake or half asleep .	ør i hovedet	
	* halvt vågen	* halvsovende
He spent many a wakeful night until his wakefulness	* vågen	
wore off , and he was able to fall into a deep and heavy sleep .	søvnløs	
	* fortage sig	* falde i > * dyb og tung søvn
Again he slept well , soundly and solidly .	* sove godt	* = * stabilt
As before he would wake up after a good night's sleep	* en god nats søvn	
as fit as a fiddle , as sound as a bell , on top of the world	* frisk som en fisk / havørn	
as right as rain , having slept like a log .	* =	* sove som en sten
Able to doze off and drift into a peaceful dreamless sleep	* døse bort	* glide ind i en ... søvn
30 he would wake up having slept like a baby .	* sove som >	* (baby), ~ en sten
As the prince's cares and worries seemed to lighten ,	* (bekymringer) lette	
his mood / spirits gradually lightened (up) .	* ngs. humør blive bedre / sindsstemning letter	
Eventually the old prince was back alight with excitement,	* - = -	
and a humorous glint in his eyes .	* lysende af ngf.	* humorfyldt * glimt i øjnene
Once again his presence would light () up the room.	* ~ lyse op i ngf.	humoristisk
The whole atmosphere in the palace lightened (up) .	* stemning	* lette
As amusement again glimmered in the prince's eyes ,	* glimte i ng's øjne	
recovery took a load` off the mind of the royal family.	* lette en byrde fra ngs. sind	
The recovery of the prince was a load off their mind.	* en byrde lettet fra ngs. sind	

433 As they aged , the old King lightened his valet's duties ;	* ældes blive ældre	* lette
he lightened his workload and burden of responsibility .	* arbejdsbyrde	* ansvars * lette ngt.
An assistant valet took care of the hard and heavy work	* hårdt ...	
while the ag(e)ing valet was spared to do light(er) work.	* aldrende	* afse til at - * lettere (arbejde)
He only had a few light duties and some light housework	* let (-te) >	* pligter * ... husarbejde
to do around the King.	*	
Having profitted from a happy master-servant relationship ,	* herre-tjener forhold	
the old valet had a long career crowned with a peaceful	* kronet med ngt.	
retirement .	* tilbagetrækning	
10 The new King still likes to be woken (up) at dawn by	* blive vækket	
the first rays of the sun pouring / spilling / streaming through	* vælde / strømme (gennem ngt.)	
the windows and wake (up) to a clear blue sky,	* vågne op til ngt.	* ~ skyfri * blå (himmel)
and a day of brilliant sunshine .	* strålende solskin	
The King regularly pays a visit to his subjects in charge.	*	
Many hills are crowned with a castle so the local	* have ngt. på toppen	
nobleman is able to watch the King and his retinue riding to	*	
the crown of the hill and on into the castle.	* top	
When a nobleman is appointed to an important post	*	
he sees it as the crowning achievement of his career.	* kronen på værket	
20 His earnest efforts are finally crowned with success.	* ~ seriøse (anstrengelser)	* krone med (succes)
His appointment crowns a glorious career in the King's	* krone >	* karriere
service.	* ~ udgøre højdepunktet	
An incident may wake a forgotten memory or feeling.	* vække (vakte, vakt) (fig. kun vt !)	
The King recollects his childhood, and reminisces about	* genkalde sig ngt.	* mindes om (hvxx)
how he liked to be wakened (up) by bird song, chirps,	* blive vækket	* fuglesang * kvidder pip
and warbles as he wakened (up) to the sound of warblers	* kvidder	* vågne op til / ved ngt. * sangfugl
singing, chirping /E& chirruping , and warbling outside.	* pip kvidre pippe	* =
It troubles the King that his dreams often waken memories	* bekymre / plage ng. at -	* vække (vakte, vakt) (fig. kun vt !)
and feelings of his past sufferings.	*	
30 Many of his disturbing and troubling feelings seem to be	* ~ foruroligende oprørende	* bekymrende plagsomme
a hangover (from his childhood).	* et levn (fra ngt.)	
Dozing fitfully , he dreams about his elder brother,	* døse	* i perioder uroligt
how he was awakened by the sound of crying and weeping	* blive vækket af ngt.	* råben, skrigen græden, gråd
and how he awakened to the sound of tumult and turmoil.	* vågne til ngt.	* græden gråd
What is it that troubles you ? the King's valet might ask,	* hvad er det der bekymrer / plager dig	
and then chirp /E& chirrup , ' Come on, lighten up ! '	* sige muntert	
as he tries to cheer the King up by humming a cheerful tune .	* nynne ngt.	* melodi
Humming softly to himself , the valet likes to potter E/A	* nynne blidt	* for sig selv
putter around / E& about (the house).	* trisse / tusse omkring	* i huset

THE FUTURE QUEEN

434 The King's love for **the object / bride of** his **choice**

and her love for **the object of** her **choice** is an **open secret**.

An **expectant smile** keeps **lighting () up** the King's **face**.

His **eyes**, his whole **face** and **expression light up**

with joy when he **projects** her **as** the queen-to-be.

The young lady indeed **returns** his **love**.

They both feel they have **achieved** their **heart's desire**.

In court circles, everybody can **hear wedding bells** (fig.).

The King **can hardly wait** to **ask for** her **hand**.

10 He **can't wait** to **ask for** her **hand in marriage**.

She's a woman of **wit**, charm, and intelligence.

She has a quick and **ready wit**, **happily** dry and sharp.

Being a **wit**, she's always **good for** a **happy witty** remark.

Her future **`in-laws** (pl.), her future **father-in-law**

and **mother-in-law**, and other **relatives by marriage**,

welcome their future **daughter-in-law with open arms**.

Even if **it worries** her **to** think about being a queen,

she'd love to **give** the King her **hand (in marriage)**.

So she accepts his proposal **unhesitatingly**.

20 They are going to **wed** (o-f) / get married as soon possible.

The **bride-to-be can't wait** – she **can hardly wait**.

She **can't wait to** tell the good news –

she **can hardly wait to wed** (o-f) / marry the King.

Though she **responds to** his attempts to **lighten** her **worry**,
she still **awaits** the **coming** wedding with some **anxiety**.

Yet the **future** queen **can't wait for** the wedding.

She **can hardly wait for** the wedding.

She **can't wait / can hardly wait for** the **big day to come**.

She **can't wait to go down the aisle**.

30 She **can hardly wait to walk down the aisle**.

The morning before the day **long awaited**,

the sky is **overcast**, covered with (a **blanket of**) low **cloud**.

The landscape around the palace **stretches out**

under a **cloudy** grey morning **sky**.

Later in the morning, the day before the wedding **anxiously**

awaited, the **cloud scatters** so the sky is just **lightly clouded**.

In the **slightly overcast sky**, the **scattered clouds**

sail across the **sky** above the **rooftop**.

* hans udkårne

* hendes ...

* offentlig hemmelighed

* forventningsfuldt * smil * ~ få ngs. ansigt til at lyse op

* øjne * ansigt * udtryk * lyse op

* ~ af (glæde) * ~ kommende (dronning)

* ~ gengælde > * kærlighed

* få opfyldt > * sit inderste ønske

* høre > * bryllups- * klokkerne (ringe)

* næsten ikke kunne vente med at - * anmode om ngs. hånd

* ikke kunne vente med at - * =

* vid, kløgt, forstand

* ~ kvik * - = - * ~ velvalgt og passende

* kvik og vittig person * god for * = * kvik

* svigerforældre (-familie) * svigerfar

* svigermor * ægteskabeligt beslægtede familie-medlemmer

* byde ng. velkommen * svigerdatter * med åbne arme

* det bekymrer ng. at -

* give ng. sin hånd

* uden tøven

* ~ blive gift

* kommende brud * ikke kunne vente * næsten ...

* - - - med at -

* næsten - - - med at - * blive gift med ng.

* reagere på ngt. * lette > * bekymring

* se frem til ngt. * kommende * nervøsitet
forestående spænding / ængstelse

* kommende * ikke kunne > * vente til ngt.

* fremtidig

* næsten - - -

* - - - / - - - * på ngt. ⇔ at - * store dag * oprinde

* ikke vente på at - * ... (kirke-) midtergang
blive gift

* næsten - - - * =

* længe ventet

* overskyet (* tæppe at >) * (lavt) skydække

* folde sig ud, ligge udstrakt

* under > * skyet * himmel

* med ængstelse

* ventet * skylag * lette * let > * skyet
spredes

* ~ på > * let * overskyet * himmel * spredte * skyer

* sejle over > * himlen * tagryg

435 Already long before noon the sky is almost **unclouded**;
it's almost **cloudless / uncloudy**.

As the last clouds soon disappear, and there's a **view of**
an **uncloudy blue sky**, it turns into an **uncloudy calm day**.

Eventually it's a **cloudless calm summer day**
where the landscape **spreads out to** the horizon
under a **cloudless blue summer sky**.

There isn't a cloud in the sky; the **sky** is **completely clear**.

The **sun** is **shining brightly high in the sky**.

10 For hours it **shines in** a clear **cloudless sky**.

The sun is shining in a sky **completely free of cloud** (U).

The **skylarks soar skyward(s)**.

Looking **skywards** you see them, and hear them singing
flying high up, and **soaring in** the (**open**) **sky**.

It's been a period of **blue skies** and warm sunshine.

Late in the afternoon **dark clouds** appear in the distance.

As the **clouds** approach, it becomes more and more **cloudy**.

It **clouds over** as the sky **clouds over**.

So the **skies** are **overcast**, and the weather is **cloudy**.

20 As the sky is **cloudy**, it's suddenly a grey and **cloudy** day.

Every time the **dark clouds** hide the sun, the sky **darkens**.

As **masses** of **heavy clouds** **gather**, they **darken** the sky.

Soon the sky **is covered with** a **mass** of **dense clouds**.

It looks like **storm clouds** and **stormy weather**.

The **heavy sky** means that a storm is coming.

They stare out of the windows as **darkness gathers**,
and the hills appear as a dark **mass** in the distance.

'The air is **heavy** – it's very **heavy** – it looks like storm –
I think there will be a **thunderstorm**,' she **points out**.

30 Once in a while, when there's a **rift in** the **clouds**,
the sun **peeps out** (**from behind** the **thick clouds**).

Only when the clouds **part**, and **beams, rays**,
and **shafts of** (**sun**>) **light** fall on the ground,
a few **gleams** of sunlight **light** () **up** the gloomy afternoon.

As the sky **darkens**, a few **drops** of **light rain** begin to fall.

As the sky **grows darker**, it looks like **thundery** weather.

There is a **light breeze** before it begins to **rain lightly**.

The King **rolls down** his **sleeves** and **buttons** the **cuffs**.

* skyfri
* =
* udsigt til
* skyfri * blå * himmel * skyfri * vindstille * dag
* skyfri * vindstille * sommer- * dag
* folde sig ud, ligge udstrakt
* skyfri * blå * sommer- * himmel
* himlen * helt * klar
* solen * skinne * klart * højt * ~ på himmelen
* (sol) * skinne * på / ~ fra > * klar * skyfri * ...
* fuldstændig * ~ skyfri
* sanglærke * stige * op mod himmelen
svæve ~ til vejrs
* =
* flyve * højt oppe * svæve højt * på > * himlen
(den åbne himmel)
* blå * ~ himmel
* mørk * sky
* sky * (over-) skyet
* blive overskyet
* overskyet
* skyet
* mørk sky * blive mørkere
formørkes
* masser af > * tunge * skyer * samle sig * formørke
trække sammen
* være overdække af > * masse af > * tætte * skyer
~ tæt skydække
* uvejrsky * uvejr
* tung himmel
* mørket * (samle sig) ~ sænker sig
* masse
* trykkende * =
tung
* tordervejr * påpege
konstatere
* sprække i > * ~ skydækket
* (solen) titte frem * fra ngt. * tykke * skyer
~ skjult bag ngt. ~skydække
* skilles * stråle > * =
* ... af > * (sol-) lys
* genskær af ngt. * oplyse ngt.
* blive mørkere * dråbe * let regn
* blive mørkere * vejr med torden
* let * brise * regne * let
* rulle > * ærmerne ned * knappe > * manchetterne

436 Suddenly there's a **cloudburst**, but after a sudden short

heavy fall of rain, the wind **abates**; it becomes **calm** again.

The **air** is **heavy, still** and **humid / muggy / sultry**.

As **the calm before the storm**, the calm weather is soon
succeeded by **strong wind(s)** and **intermittent showers**:

heavy showers of both **rain** and **hail**.

As **heavy rain** and **hail showers** alternate,
it **rains** and **hails** alternately.

At first it rains or hails **intermittently**

10 but when it starts to **rain** or **hail heavily** constantly,
thunderly sky (U) and **thunderly rain**

suggest that a thunderstorm is brewing (up).

Thunder is likely when the **thunderclouds** gather.

You **are in for** a storm with **thunder** and **lightning**
when you hear the **rumble** and **roar of** distant **thunder**.

It **thunders** and **lightens ominously** in the distance
as the distant **rolls of thunder** is nearing. *Look at page 500 !!*

Suddenly everybody is **startled by a thunderbolt**.

All are shocked by a **flash** of extremely **bright light**;

20 a flash of **dazzling** and **blinding light**.

They experience an extremely bright **flash of lightning**
accompanied by a **startling thunderclap**, a **startlingly great**
clap / crack / crash of thunder.

Everybody **looks startled** as **lightning flashes overhead**.

The **thunder booms** and **crashes** around them
and **startle** the servants.

Looking at each other **with startled eyes**, some frightened
servants come **thundering** downstairs like **startled rabbits**.

Having **clapped** and **cracked around** the palace for a while,

30 the **thunder, preceded by gleams** of lightning,
dies out rolling, roaring, and rumbling in the distance.

Houses and trees are exposed to **lightning strokes**.

The **thatch** of a **thatch** easily **kindles**.

If a house is **hit by lightning**, flames and a fire may **kindle**.

Suddenly they notice a **light** in the distance.

Something has likely been **struck by lightning**.

A **lightning stroke** may have **lit / kindled a fire**.

After a while the sky **lights up**; flames **light () up** the sky.

The fire **kindles** the sky in the far distance.

* skybrud

* kraftig * nedbør af (regn) * (vind) aftage * vindstille
/ stilne af

* luften * tung * stillestående * fugtig lummervarm

* stilhed før stormen (uvejr)

* stærk, kraftig * vind(e) * tilbagevendende * byge
vekslende

* stærk * byge af > * regn * hagl (-vejr)
kraft

* = * regn- * hagl- * byge

* regne * hagle

* med mellemrum

* regne * hagle * kraftigt

* tordenagtig * himmel * regn

* tyde på at - * tordenvejr * trække op

* torden * tordensky * samle sig

* ~ man kan vist vente > * torden * lynen
~lyn og torden

* rumlen af ...

* tordne * lyne * ildevarslende

* rumlen af ...

* overraske / forbløffe * lyn og tordenskrald
forskrække / opskræmme ng.

* (lys-) glimt * klart / kraftigt lys

* blændende * blændende ...

* lyn (-glimt)

* overraske- / forbløffe- * tordenskrald * =
forskrække- / opskræmmende
=

* overrasket, forbløffet * lynen * glimte * ovenover
forskrækket, opskræmt lyne hovedet / -rne
* torden * buldre * brage

* overraske, forbløffe
forskrække, opskræmme

* <<<

* tordne * opskræmte * kanin
brage

* =

* torden * ~ komme efter ngt. * svag lysglimt af ngt.

* dø ud * rumle * = * =

* lynnedslag

* tækkehalm * stråtag * antændes

* ramt af > * lynet * (flammer / ild) blusse op

* lys

* ramt af lynet

* lynnedslag * antænde > * ild, (ilde-) brand

* lyse op * oplyse ngt.

* oplyse ngt.

437 The **residents wait for** the storm **to abate**.

As the storm stops, it is followed by a **showery** evening.

(Years later the palace is provided with

a **lightning conductor** (E) or **lightning rod** (A)

which **diverts** lightning **away** from the building.

If sb. or sth. in America is a **lightning rod for** attention
criticism, blame etc. he gets most of it.)

' **Lightning never strikes (in the same place) twice** ' –
that is a **qualified truth**.

10 Many nights they sit **in front of** the **fireplace**

and talk **by the light of** the fire.

Every day, a servant **kindles** a fire in fireplace.

Everything looks grey **in the dim light of** the flames.

When it's **bedtime** they go to the **bedroom**.

The King **lights** their **way**.

Carrying a lamp which won't **blow out**, he **lights the way**.

' **Shine a light** over here, will you ? she asks him.

Having **blown / put () `out** the **light(s)**,

except for the **delicate flame** of a **solitary light**

20 **burning dimly** in the room, they **go straight to bed**.

The King **blows / puts out** the **candle glimmering**
on his **bedside table**.

Having **gone to bed** to **sleep**, they **go out like a light**.

Falling asleep **in each other's arms**

they **are both out like a light**.

The King is a **heavy breather**; he **breathes heavily**.

The future queen is lulled to sleep by his **heavy breathing**.

As they may only have a **short sleep** the next night,

they need a **good** and **restful sleep**.

30 When they **go to sleep**, they **drift / fall into a deep sleep**.

So having **got to sleep** and **drifted / fallen into slumber(s)**,
they **pass into (a) deep slumber / deep slumbers**.

The King **wakes (up)** at seven when it's starting to **get light**.

Waking (up) at first **`light**, he doesn't feel **sleepy**.

When he **awakens**, he feels **awake**.

He doesn't **wake (up)** his fiancée.

He doesn't **wake** his fiancée **up** but lets her **sleep `on**
for another hour.

The King **wakens** his sleeping fiancée (**up**) at eight.

* beboer * vente på ngt. <=> at - * (uvejr) stilne af

* byggepræget

*

* lynafleder

* = (stang)

* lede ngt. bort

aflede ngt.

* afleder for ngt.

*

* lynet rammer ikke samme sted to gange

* sandhed med modification

* ~ foran >

* ildsted, kamin

* lysskær

* antænde (ild)

* ... svag lys fra

* sengetid

* soveværelse

* lyse vej

* blæses ud

* lyse vej

* lyse

* puste / slukke >

* lyset (lysene)

* svag

* flamme

* enligt

* lys

* brænde

* svagt

* gå lige i seng

* puste > ud / slukke

* lys

* lyse svagt og flimrende

* sengebord

* gå i seng for at sove

* gå ud som et lys

* i armene på hinanden

* være gået ud som et lys

* en der ånder / trækker vejret tungt

* ...

* tungt åndedræt / vejtrækning

* ... søvn

* ... og afslappet ...

* lægge sig til at sove

* glide ind / falde i en dyb søvn

* falde i søvn

* =

* falde i (en) dyb ...

* =

* blive lyst

* =

* så snart det bliver lyst

* søvni

* vågne

* vågen

* vække ng.

* =

* sove videre

* ~ en time mere

* vække ng.

438 A cold grey light creeps under the heavy velvet curtains.	* koldt ...	* snige sig ind under	* tung
The King draws (back) / pulls back / opens the curtains	* ~ trække gardinerne til side		
to let in the light .	* lade lyset komme ind		
The morning light comes streaming in through	*		
the silken draw-curtains edged with lace.	* fortræksgardin	* kantet med >	* knibling
' Wakey – wakey, wake up, love , it's eight, ' the King	* vågne		* min kære
warbles .	* synge med kvidrende stemme		
Even though he awakens her gently, she's awakes at once	* =		* vågen
at the warble of his voice.	* kvidren		
10 ' What time did you wake (up) ? ' she asks.	* hvad tid / hvornår vågnede du		
' It was light when I awoke , ' the King remarks .	hvad var klokken, da du vågnede		
As the rising sun lightened the sky at daybreak ,	* lyst	* vågnede	* gøre opmærksom på
and it was beginning to get light at sunrise ,	* opstigende (sol)	* gøre >	* lysere * himmel * (ved)
the weather lightened at dawn .	* blive lyst		daggry
The light gray and pink eastern sky lightened	* vejret	* blive lysere	* daggry
and, eventually, the morning sky turned light blue .	* lysegrå	* klare op	* østlig * & lysne
The king slept seven hours while the future queen	* lyserød		
slept for eight hours.	* blive / forandre sig til ngt.		* lysegrå
*	* sove (i)		
	* ...		
	*		

20 DRESSMAKING

The dressmaker uses a tape measure / measuring tape	* dameskrædder		* målebånd
for measuring (the body and the dress).	* måle (ngt.)		
Using their scissors , the cutter cuts () out the dress.	* saks	* tilskærer	* tilskære ngt.
Using a variety of needles and thread(s) ,	* nål		* tråd
the dressmaker starts to sew .	* sy	* synål	* tråd
Sewing seam after seam , she sews the dress.	* sy >	* søm	* efter ... * sy >
As the future queen is fitted for her wedding dress,			* tøj
she tries () on the sky-blue dress.	* være til tilpasningsprøvning for ngt.		
As the dress is full of needles and pins , she puts her arms	* prøve ngt. på		* himmelblå
30 carefully through the armholes .	* synåle		* knappenåle
The arms will need shortening .	* ærmegab		
The sleeves will be edged with lace .	* ærme		* afkortning
The dress fastens at the back ; it laces up at the back	* kantet med ngt.		forkortelse
If you stay in an uncomfortable position you may	* lukkes	* på bagsiden / ryggen	* knibling
get / have pins and needles in a limb : in your arm or leg.	*	* på bagsiden / ryggen	* snøres
Most people involved in the wedding preparations	* ~ blive følelsesløs		
are on tenterhooks (eE); they are on pins and needles (A).	*	~ arm / ben sover	* lem
They wonder if / whether they can make it .	* ~ som på nåle		
	* spekulere på om >		* kan nå det

439 At the wedding day it's a **light day**.

* ~ dag med klart vejr

The **bride** and **groom** have a **heavy schedule / timetable**.

* brud * gom * travl * program * tidsplan
(= brudeparret) skema skema
* ~ alenlang

Having got a list of things to do **as long as your arm**,
the bride and **bridegroom** are going to have a **heavy day**.

* brudgom * travl

When the royal couple **leave for** their wedding,

* tage af sted til ngt.

they **start for** the church **with** a **light heart**.

* tage af sted til ngt. * ~ let om hjertet, i godt humør

The King's **eyes light up** when his bride **comes up** the **aisle**.

* øjen lyse op * komme op ad midtergangen
(kirkegulvet)

His **eyes light up with** happiness as she **goes up** the **aisle**.

* ... lyse af (glæde) * gå - - -

A **confident gleam lights () up** the bride's **eyes**.

* tillidsfuldt * glimt * få (ngs.) øjne til at lyse

10 A smile **lights () up** her **face**.

* få ansigtet til at lyse op

As her **face lights up (with** pleasure, joy, and happiness),

* ansigt * lyse op af (velbehag etc.)

the King knows he **can't face** a day without (being near) her.

* ~ ikke kunne udholde (at) ngt.

Wearing his **mitre**, a hat or cap, with a tall pointed **crown**,

* ikklædt * bispehue * top, puld

the Archbishop **joins** the happy couple **in marriage**.

* forene ng. i ægteskab, (ægte-) vie ng.

At the **wedding ceremony**, all his **attention** is **fastened on**

* bryllups- * ceremoni * opmærksomhed * fæstnet på /
optaget af ngt.

his **performing** of the proper **wedding rites** as the groom

* udførelse af > * vielses- * ritual (-er)

and the bride **make / take** their (**marriage / wedding**) **vows**.

* ~ aflægge > * ægteskabs- * løfte

A month ago the king had **lit (up)on** a couple of rings.

* falde over / tilfældigt finde ngt.

He had **lighted (up)on** a couple of **wedding rings / bands**.

* = * vielses- * ring

20 His **eyes** had **lighted (up)on** a couple of choice rings.

* øjne > * falde på ngt.

His **eyes** had **lit (up)on** a couple of choice wedding rings.

* =

As the Bishop **marry** the bride and groom,

* vie ng.

he **joins** them **together in holy matrimony**.

* forene ng. i helligt ægteskab

Joined in the bonds of matrimony, they promise to be

* smede ng. i Hymens lænker

truthful **during** their **joint lives**.

* ... forenet / fælles ... (så længe de begge er i live)

What God hath **joined** let no man **put asunder**.

* sammenføje / forene ngt. * slå i stykker / itu
/ fra hinanden

Joined in holy matrimony, the married couple kiss.

* ... i helligt ægtestand

' I'm sure you'll all **join** me **in** wishing the King and Queen
a long and happy marriage,' the bishop concludes.

* tilslutte sig ng. med at -

30 Expecting the King and Queen to be **faithfull to the last**,

* tro (-fast) * til det sidste

all the guests **join with** the bishop **in** his wish.

* ~ tilslutte sig ng. i (deres ønske)

Tears cloud the **eyes** of the married couple as well as

* tårer > * gøre ngs. øjne uklare

the **eyes** of many of the wedding guests **cloud with tears**.

* blive uklar / sløres af tårer

Tears cloud their **outlook / vision**.

* tårer > * sløre > * ngs. udsyn
& gøre ngs. syn uklart

Getting misty-eyed as their eyes **grow misty**,

* ~ få fugtige / tårevædede * øjne > * blive ...

some of the guests just see everything as a **misty blur**.

* sløret * uklarhed

The King and the Queen manage to **dry** their **eyes / tears**.

* ~ holde op med at græde

440 Waiting for the Archbishop **to** end the wedding,
most children sit **patiently waiting for** the wedding **to** end.

An unruly child doesn't attend **the last of** the wedding,
as he's send away from **the rest of** the ceremony.

Many guests are **closely** or **distantly / remotely related**.

'What **relation of / to** the King is the King's **best`man** ? '

a wedding guest asks his wife.

'A **close / near relation**, a **first cousin** I think,' she answers.

Some family members are **first cousins** while others are

10 second cousins, or **distant / remote cousins**.

'Are the **bridemaids related** –

are they **related to** the bride –

what **relative of / to** the bride is the bride's maid ? '

another guest asks his wife.

'The oldest maid, wearing a **plain** but elegant **dress**,

is a **close / near relative of / to** the bride

while the younger ones are more **distant / remote relations** -

they are more distant / remote **relatives** but I'm not sure of

the exact **relationship between** them,' his wife answers.

20 Blood-related relations / relatives are related by blood

while other relations / relatives are **related by marriage**

So some relations / relatives are **blood relations / relatives**

while others are **relations / relatives by marriage**,

Even though it can be said that all humans **descend from**

the same **ancestors**, believed by some to be Adam and Eve,

people are considered **unrelated** if their **relationship**

ûnre`leitud

is rather **remote / distant**, or **is lost in the distance**.

'I **was wondering if / whether** you would do me a favour -

I **wonder if / whether** you could take me to my home

30 after the wedding,' one relative asks another.

as he **drapes** his arm **around** the other one's shoulder.

The royal wedding is certainly a **magnificent occasion**

and to many, it's **the (social) event of** the year.

Men and women **in evening dress** may wear a colourful

sash around the waist, and at ceremonial occasions

some wear a **sash draped / draping** from one shoulder

to the opposite hip often as part of a uniform.

* vente / håbe på at ng. gør ng.

* tålmodigt

* - - - at ng. sker

* det sidste af ng.

* resten af ng.

* nært / fjernt >

* beslægtede

~ i nær / fjern i familie med hinanden

* slags familiemedlem i forhold til ng.

* forlover

*

* nærtstående ...

* kusine / fætter

* (første) kusine / fætter

* kusine- / fætterbørn

* ~ fjernere slægtninge

* brudepige

* i familie

* ... med

* slags familiemedlem / slægtning i forhold til ng.

*

* enkelt (men elegant) >

* klædning, kjole

* nær (-stående) <<

* fjern ...

*

=

* familieforhold mellem ng.

* blodsbeslægtede * slægtninge * ~ kødeligt beslægtet

* beslægtede >

* gennem ægteskab

* slægtninge

* kødelige ...

* slægtninge >

* < <

* nedstamme fra ng.

* (fædrene / mødrene) ophav, aner, forfædre

* ~ ikke i familie (med hinanden)

* slægtsskab

* fjernt

* ~ fortaber sig i det fjerne

* tænkte på om - , ~ høflig anmodning om en tjeneste

* tænker ...

*

* ~ lægge (sin arm) om (ngs. skuldre)

* storslået >

* begivenhed

* (selskabelige) begivenhed

⇔

(årets)

* ~ i festtøj / festklædt

* skærf

*

=

* ~ hængt / hænge løst + prep.

*

441 A wonderful light lies over the landscape	* lys	* ligge / hvile over
stretching to the horizon.	* strække sig til (horisonten)	
The valley is bathed in the soft warm light of afternoon.	* badet i ngt.	* blødt, varmt lys
The fruitful trees are heavy with ripe fruit.	* frugtbar	* tung af ngt. * moden (frugt)
The brown palace and the beautiful flower beds	* blomster-	* bed
stretching around the palace lies bathed in sunlight .	* ligge udstrakt ... * badet i ngt. * ... sollys / -skin	
Some smoke starts to issue from a chimney ,	* (røg) ~ komme ud fra >	* skorsten
and soon a plume of smoke rises from all the chimneys.	* (fjerlignende) søjle af > * røg * stige op fra ngt. plu~m ~ røgsøjle	
Some bricks stand out auburn while the joints between	* mursten * fremstå * rødbrun * fuge kastanjebrun	
10 the bricks stand out light brown.	* lyse-	
The guards wear full dress: full-dress uniforms including	* galla	* ... -
a wide-brimmed hat fitted with a plume on the high crown .	* bredskygget * udstyret med > * fjerbusk * top puld	
The wedding festivities are a joint effort .	* fælles anstrengelse	
The festivities are organized jointly by the King and Queen,	* i fællesskab	
and the rest of the court.	*	
A beautiful driveway leads up to the palace.	* indkørsel	
All afternoon an armada of carriages crawl along the drive .	* armade * snegle sig afsted langs	* =
The guests are bid good evening and bid welcome	* byde ng. godaften	* ... velkommen
by the Master of Ceremonies and greeted with	* ceremonimester	
20 a light snack and a celebratory welcome glass .	* let * mellemmåltid * fejnings * velkomstglas / -drink seli`brietêri E/A `selêbrêtâ~ri	
The waiters load glasses and snacks onto a tray ,	* fylde ngt. op på	* (serverings-) bakke
and walk around offering the guests a drink and a snack.	*	
Bringing a whole load of gifts, bringing loads (pl. E) of gifts,	* en hel bunke	* bunkevis
the guests load the married couple with gifts.	* overdænget med ngt.	
' Never / don't look a gift horse in the mouth ' it's said.	* man skal ikke skue given hest i munden	
The air in the hall is filled with the heavy scent of perfume	* tung duft	
in the wake of the ladies, (looking) resplendent in	* i kølvandet på ng.	* strålende pragtfuld
their evening gowns .	* selskabsrobe	
The escutcheon of the royal family hangs in the hall.	* våbenskjold	
30 It's a gilded shield on which their coat of arms is depicted.	* forgyldt	* ~ våbenmærke
A coat of arms was originally a surcoat or tabard	* = * våbenfrakke	* våbenkjortel
on which heraldic devices , the arms , were embroidered ,	* < på * heraldisk * påfund * (være) broderet < ~ heraldik	
and meant to convey a sense of energy and strength.	* bibringe >	* fornemmelse af ngt.
Nobody wants a blot on his escutcheon .	* en plet på sin ære	
Heavy-duty carpets cover the floors.	* kraftig	* dække ngt.
An old jointed suit of armour , movable in the joints ,	* svær * ledforsynet * rustning	* led
is on view in a room with a poor natural light .	* på udstilling	* med dårligt naturligt lys
It looks ghoastly in the poor light .	* spøgelsesagtig	* dårligt lys

442 The windows of the palace have **bars** and **lights**.

The big windows are **divided up into** sixteen lights
and some windows have **leaded lights**.

Slanting down in **bars**, the **light of the sun streams in**
through the **sixteen-light** windows.

All kinds of **bright, shining** and **glossy** objects
shine / (o-f) lighten resplendently in the sunshine.

In these rooms only **colour-fast, heavy-duty** cloth
and **lightfast** colours will do.

10 Some **dark-coloured** and **gaily coloured** materials
are **bleached** by the sun so the colours **lighten** and get **pale**.

If a material **bleaches** when exposed to sunshine,
the sunshine gradually **lightens** it's colours.

Bleach is a chemical used to **bleach** something.

It **lightens** things or makes them white.

The palace's **crown`jewel** and **crowning glory**
is a **stunning** collection of **canvases by** famous artists.

The best canvases hang in **good light** in the **lightest** rooms
on **light pink, light green** and **light yellow** walls.

20 So **light-`coloured** walls **lighten** these rooms.

Some pictures **deserve mentioning; deserving of** attention,
they **deserve to** hang in rooms with **good natural light**.

The **comings and goings** of people easily **stain** the carpets
so the carpets here have a **slightly darker** colour
as **darker** carpets don't easily **stain / show stains**.

The pictures **depict / represent`** **portraits**,
landscapes, seascapes, townscapes and **still lives**.

The **eyes** of many men **light on** the female **curves**
abundantly adorning the **curvy** body on a **full-length** portrait
30 of a **lightly** or rather **scantly dressed / (litt.) clad vamp**.

Many pictures are **loaded with** cultural **significance**.

Showing a winter landscape, one **canvas illustrates**
the cold, **harsh light** of a winter morning or afternoon.

The pictures are painted in **dark and light colours**
with **light** and **shade** and delicate **highlights**.

The **wake** of a boat appears incredible realistic.

A horse-drawn carriage leaves **clouds of dust** in its **wake**.

The colours look different in different **light**,
either in **natural** or **artificial light**.

* sprosse * fag

* dele op i ngt.

* blyndfattet rude

* skråne ned * (i) striber * solens lys * vælde ind

* -fags

* strålende * & lysende * skinnende
skinnende spejlblank

* skinne, blinke * strålende
reflektere lys pragtfuldt
* farveægte * kraftig

* lysægte

* mørkfarvet * muntert * farvet

* (blive) bleget * lysne, falme * bleg, falmet

* bleges

* lysne (farve), få (farve) til at falme

* blegemiddel * blege ngt.

* lysne ngt.

* pragtstykke

* forbløffende (samling) * (oliemaleri på) lærred
(malet) af ng.

* i godt lys * lyseste

* lys * lyserød * lyse- (grøn) * ... (gul)

* i lyse farver * gøre (rum) lysere

* fortjene at - * blive nævnt * ~ fortjene
(opmærksomhed)

* godt * naturligt * lys

* kommen og gåen * plette (gulvtæppe)

* anelse * mørkere (farve)

* mørkere (tæppe) * få pletter / blive plettet * plet

* afbillede / * = * portræt
gengive / vise ngt.

* stilleben

* ~ ngs. blik * falde på > * kurver, ~ former

* til overflod * pryde > * kurvet (krop) * (portræt)
~ i hel figur

* let > * sparsomt > * påklædt * vamp
~ for letpåkædt ~ mandebedårer

* fuld af ngt. * betydning
vigtighed

* vise ngt. * oliemaleri på lærred * belyse /
~ anskueliggøre >

* skarp / skærende > * lys

* mørk * lys farve

* lys * skygge * lysvirkning

* kølvand

* sky ⇔ * støv- *

* lys

* naturligt / kunstigt ...

443 One of the guests glances at a **skylight**.

Facing the **intense light**, he is **dazzled**.

Having had the **strong light** in his **eyes**,

he is **blinded** by the **dazzle**.

It's hard / **strenuous** work to **clean** all the **windowpanes**.

A **pane** of glass may accidentally break.

Lighting is the arrangement or type of **light** and **lights**

which **lights** a place, making it more or less **light**.

When it's **light outside**, **natural light** and **natural lighting**

10 will do in most rooms.

In the many dark **basements** and **cellars** it's only possible

to **orient** / **E& orientate oneself** by **artificial lighting**

artificial light.

So people **find** / **get** / **take** their **bearings** by

candlelight or **lamplight**.

If the **light goes out** it's easy to **lose one's bearings**.

The evening shadows **darken** the rooms.

In the evening, when the setting sun **gilds** the lake,

and the **light** begins to **fade out**, it's **lighting-up time**.

20 As **darkness fades in**, it's time to **light up**.

Lighted candles in **candlesticks**, and oil lamps provide

the **lighting**, and give the evening a **sense of occasion**.

Large **candelabra(s)** / **candelabums** provide

the **brightly lit** rooms with **bright light**.

A candelabra or candelabrum is a **holder** / **standard**

with several **branches** for holding candles or lamps.

' **Have you got a light** ? E/EA **Do you have a light** ? –

Could you give me a light ? ' a servant asks.

They use a **spill** or a **tinderbox** to **light** a candle or a fire.

The tinderbox is **fitted with** a **flint** and **steel** to **strike a light**.

30 It holds **tinder**, a highly flammable material, which catches

the spark from the flint and **steel** struck together.

Sometimes the tinder, a candle or a fire won't **light**.

If they can't **get** a candle or lamp **to light**, it is replaced.

Steel is various **artificially** produced forms of iron,

having a **carbon content** less than of **pig iron** and higher than

of **wrought iron** and having qualities varying according to

composition and heat treatment to make it **tempered steel**.

Cast iron is an **alloy** of iron, carbon and other elements.

* ovenlysvindue

* rette ansigtet mod / * skarpt * lys * blændet
have ansigtet rettet mod >
* få / have lyset i øjnene

* gjort blind af > * blændende lys

* anstrengende * ~ pudse > * vinduesrude / -glas
(arbejde)
* rude

* belysning * lys * lyskilde, lampe

* oplyse ngt. * oplyst * lyst

* lyst udenfor * naturlig belysning * ... lys

* ~ være nok / tilstrækkeligt

* kælder / -værelse * kælderrum norm. u. vinduer

* orientere sig * kunstig * belysning

* kunstigt * lys

* orientere sig

* levende lys * lampelys

* lyset går ud * miste orienteringen

* gøre mørkere

* forgyldte ngt. (fig.)

* lys * svinde * ~ lygtetændingstid

* mørket * tiltage gradvist * ~ tænde lys

* tændt * tælle- / stearinlys * lysestage

* belysning * en til lejlighede passende stemning

* kandelaber

* klart * oplyst (rum) * strålende / klart * lys

* holder / stander

* gren, arm

* har du ild

* ku' du gi' mig ild

* fidibus * fyrtøj * tænde ngt.

* udstyret med > * flint(e)sten * stål * slå ild

* optændingsmateriale

* stål

* tænde, -s
begynde at brænde
* få ngt. til at tænde

* kunstigt

* kul (-stof) * indhold * pig- / rå- * jern

* smedejern

* sammensætning * hærdet stål

* støbe- * jern * legering

444 A darkened room, staircase or corridor may be left in ,	* mørkt	* trappe	* være efterladt i / & henligge i >
and lie in complete / impenetrable darkness so the servants	* henligge i >	* komplet / ugennemtrængelig	* mørke
carry a lighted candle or lighted lamp to light their way .	* tændt (stearinlys)	* ... (lampe) m. ild	* lyse sig vej
So they take care to put a light to other lamps and candles.	* sætte ild (<giver) til / ~ tænde ngt.		
In the faint light the servants can just see by the light of	* svagt lys		* ved ngts. lys / skær
the lamp as they start to light the candles in the lamps	* tænde ngt.		
and candelabra, and light a fire in the fireplaces and stoves .	* tænde >	* ild	* i kamin
Having a cheerful blaze going in a fireplaces, a room is	* livlig >	* flammen blussen	* få / være på plads
soon warm and cosy with a fire blazing on the hearth .	* flammende		* i ngt. // finde sted > * på kaminbunden
10 In some rooms it's pitch`dark so if the lamp goes out ,	* ... bælg mørkt		
they are left in pitch`darkness .	* efterladt		* bælg mørke
It's awkward to find oneself in the pitch dark ,	* ubekvemt		* =
and have to find one's way in total darkness .	* finde vej (i >)		* <<
Several torches light () the court `up.	* fakkel		* oplyse
A flight of stairs / steps leads up to the front door.	* forløb af trappetrin		
The torchlight lights () `up the court and the front steps .	* fakkelskær	* =	* udvendig hovedtrappe
Lit / lighted by several lights mainly large candelabra(s),	* oplyst af >		* lyskilde
the entrance hall , the main stairs or main staircase ,	* forhal	* indvendig hovedtrappe	* =
the assembly hall , ceremonial hall , banqueting hall	* forsamlings- / festsal, aula	* solemnitet-	* gildehal
20 and ballroom are well lit .	* balsal		* godt oplyst
Radiating a lot of light, the candelabra light`up all around.	* udstråle / -sende >	* lys	* lyse op
A lot of light radiates from the candelabums (&pl.)	*		
so when all the candles are lit / lighted , they light () `up	* være tændt	* lyse ngt. op, ~ oplyse ngt.	
all the rooms, and glint on all the glass and silver.	* ~ lyse glimtende på ngt.		
Glints of the light on shiny objects come from everywhere.	* glimt fra ngt.		* skinnende
Catching the light all the time, mirrors, silverware ,	* fange >	* lyset	* sølvtøj
ladies' jewellery , and the prisms of the chandeliers	* smykker	* prisme	* prismelysekrone
are constantly gleaming and glinting in the light .	* skinne	* glimte i >	* lyset
Lit`up all night, the brightly lit palace is a dazzle .	* oplyst	* strålende	* oplyst
30 The halls connect .	* ~ være i direkte forbindelse		
The halls are connected by big beautifully decorated	* forbinde ngt.		
connecting doors gleaming with wax polish	* direkte forbindende		* skinne svagt af ngt.
A dumb waiter , used to lift food, plates etc. from one level	* køkke- / madelevator		
to another connects the kitchen with the banqueting hall.	* forbinde ngt .med ngt.		
As the staff put the kitchen in order late in the evening,	* bringe ngt. i orden		
the kitchen is brightly lit ; it's a room with good light .	* klart / strålende oplyst		* med godt lys
The depositories are poorly or badly lit .	* depot, magasin		
Without a portable light it may be hard to find	* opbevaringsrum		
what you are looking for in a room with poor or bad light .	* bærbar lysgiver		
	* ringe / dårlig lys		

445 That night, **lights** are **ablaze / burning** in all rooms.

There are **lights on** all night.

A lot of candles, lamps, and flames in the **fireplaces**

give / radiate light and **heat**.

So a lot of **light** and **heat radiate from** many places.

The **lighted windows** are bright all night, so **lighting up**,
the palace **lights () up** its surroundings all night.

Except for rare occasions, the King **spends lightly**.

Lamps **light** the front door, and **lighten** the stairs.

10 If the **lighting** is **bad**, and the **light** is **bad**,

the guests may easily **stumble**.

The King and his **consort await** the guests in the hall.

(A queen's husband is called **the prince consort**.)

The King **has** the queen **on his arm**

while they **wait for** the guests.

Arm in arm they **wait for / await** the guests **to** arrive.

Their presence **light ()** the room **up**.

A **hearty** welcome **awaits** the guests.

They welcome the guests **with open arms**.

20 Some **dear** guests are **given** a **rapturous welcome**.

Many of the female guests are **lightly clad**,

having a handbag **on** their **arm**, or **carrying** it **under** their **arm**.

Having **drenched** themselves **in** perfume,

some guests leave a smell of perfume in their **wake**.

Having **applied powder** and **rouge to excess**,

and **lipstick** in **loud**, **gaudy** and **garish (shades of)** **red**,

some guests **wear** real **heavy `make-up**.

On top of that, they often wear **garish / gaudy** clothes.

Having **applied quiet lipstick** and **powder** sparingly **to**

30 their faces, others guests just wear **light** make-up.

The guests **shower / load** the **newly-weds with praise**

and presents, so the **gift table** is **loaded with** gifts.

Groaning with gifts, the table **groans under the weight**.

The guests won't **disturb** the gifts.

People may **fall into discrete / separate categories**, e.g.
di'skri ~t

on the assumption that they are either **discreet** or **indiscreet**.
di'skri~t indi'skri~t

A couple of servants follow in the **wake** of the **royal couple**.

The servants **wait on** the royal family **full-time**,

and **wait on** them **hand and food**.

* ~ brænder der lys

* lys tændt

* ildsted
kamin

* give > * udstråle / sprede > * lys * varme

* = * = * stråle ud fra ngt.

* oplyst * lyse op

* oplyse / belyse ngt.

* bortset fra sjældne tilfælde * være forsigtig med at >
give penge ud

* oplyse ngt.

* op-, belysning * dårlig * lys * =

* snuble

* gemal (-inde) * vente på ng.

* prinsgemal

* holdende sig under armen

* vente på ng.

* vente på ng. ⇔ at -

* lyse op i ngt.

* hjertlig * vente ng.

* med åbne arme

* kær (gæst) * givet > * begejstret * velkomst
henrykt

* let klædt på

* have / bære ngt. på armen * - - - under ...

* ~ gennemfugte sig > * i parfume

* kølvand

* påføre > * pudder * rouge * i overdreven grad
~ umådeholdent

* læbestift * skrigende * = * = * (nuance af) rød

* have > på * kraftig * & sminke
gå med >

* spraglet (tøj), ~ i skrigende farver

* påføre > * ~ diskret * læbestift * pudder * til ngt.

* lidt

* overøse / * nygift * lovprisning
belæsse ng. med ngt.

* gavebord * være belæsse med /
bugne af ngt.

* knage med (gaver) * ... under vægten
~ være belæsset * være overlæsset

* flytte om på ngt.

* falde i > * adskilte * kategorier

* ~ ud fra den antagelse at - * diskret * indiskret
taktfuld taktløs

* kølvand * kongepar

* betjene / opvarte ng. * hele arbejdstiden

* i alle ender og kanter

446 There's loads to do.

The wedding **markedly adds to** the **workload**,
and especially **increases** the staff's **workload**.

As the wedding **puts** an **additional / extra load on** the staff,
the household needs extra **domestic`help**.

So more staff is hired to **cope with** the **increased workload**,
and extra staff **is taken on** in order to **spread** the **load**.

More **domestics** (o-f), more **domestic`servants / helps**,
dê` mestiks
are hired to do **domestic`service / work**.

10 As there are still **lots / masses of** work to do,
the staff is **struggling** to cope with the **heavy workload**.

Besides the **staff of servants**, local **waiters** and **waitresses**
assist in **waiting on** the royal family and **waiting at table**.

A lot of people want to **be in waiting on** the royal
personages so the butler **keeps** a **waiting list**,
and **put** people **on** the **waiting list**

There is a long **wait**; a long **wait for full-time** employment

The guests **wait** outside the banqueting hall.

Come on ! Hurry up ! Quick ! – the guests are **waiting**,

20 the **head waiter** urges.

The servants are ready to **wait on** the guests.

Some nobles expect to **be`waited on hand and food**.

The servants **wait at`table**.

So if a guest is **waiting to** be served

he won't have to be **waiting long**.

There are **loads to** eat.

If a guest is **waiting for** a servant, and reacts **impatiently**,
the servants are instructed to **politely request**,

' **Wait your turn**, please ! – **Wait a little / a moment**, please !

30 – **Wait until / till** I come back, please !

Everything comes to him who waits.

Burdened with heavy bowls, dishes, and trays, carrying
a napkin **over** their **arm**, the waiters serve around the table.

Liquids easily **spill** so they take care not to **spill** anything,
especially not to **spill** it down / on / over a guest.

The banquet includes both **light courses**
and **heavy courses loaded with calories** (sg: a **calorie**).

Fish and meat are served on a **bed** of vegetables.

The guests are requested to **do justice to the dishes**.

* der er en masse, der skal gøres

* markant * (for-) øge > * arbejdsbyrde

* - = -

* lægge en ekstra byrde på ng.

* hjælp i huset

* klare ngt. * øgede * arbejdsbyrde

* blive ansat * fordele * byrde

* tjener, der arbejder i huset * =

pl: tyende, tjenestefolk

* huslig tjeneste

* masser af (arbejde)

* knokle * tung * arbejdsbyrde

overvældende

* tjenerstab * tjener * servitrice

* servere for / opvarte ng. * varte op ved > * bord

* være i tjeneste

/ gøre sin opvartning hos

* personage * føre > * venteliste

* sætte på ...

* ventetid * ... på ngt. * fuldtids-

* vente

* =

* overtjener

* & servere for ng.

* & have en tjener på hver finger

* varte op (ved bordet)

* vente på at -

* vente længe

* masser at -

* vente på ng. * utålmodigt

* høflig * anmode

* vent til det bliver din tur * vent lidt / et øjeblik

* vent til ...

* ~ kan du vente kan du blive konge af Sverige

* bebyrdet af ngt.

* over armen

* spildes / flyde over * spilde ngt.

* ... adv.

* let * ret (af flere)

kaloriefattig

* tung * fuld af ngt. * kalorie

-rig

* leje, bund

underlag

* ~ tage for sig af retterne

447 They have a **light** white wine with the fish,
and a **rich** red wine with the meat courses.

Some guests prefer a **heavy** dessert like a **heavy** cake

loaded with butter and sugar.

A **pastry** may be made using **light** **pastry**.

Some guests **prefer** a dessert **to be light** and refreshing.

Some of the guests are **heavyweights**

who **help** themselves **to the dishes**.

Eating heavily and **drinking heavily**,

10 these **heavy eaters** and **heavy drinkers**

load their stomach **with** food drink seemingly unaware of
the fatal effects of **heavy eating** and **heavy drinking**.

Ordinarily the King is a **light eater** and a **light drinker**

who, just like the queen, only **eats lightly** and **drinks lightly**.

They don't eat too much **heavy** or **greasy** food.

On rare occasions, though, they enjoy **falling to the dishes**.

The kitchen is **fitted out with** equipment for **preparing**
and **cooking** both **light meals** and **big** and **heavy meals**,
and occasionally **big** and **heavy dinners**.

20 So the kitchen has a lot of **heavy-duty** equipment.

The kitchen has both **light** and **heavy kitchenware**:

light and **heavy kitchen** and **cooking utensils**

such as **light** and **heavy pots** and **pans** as well as

cookbooks /E& **cooking books**, and **recipe books**.

The **chef**, the **chef de cuisine**, the **head of the kitchen**,
the **head cook**, could do most of his work **in his sleep**.

The butcher has **jointed** the **meat**; he has cut the meat into
pieces of **beef**, **veal**, **pork**, **mutton**, **chicken** etc.

In Britain a **joint of** beef, veal, ect. is a large piece of meat

30 or **roast**, usually containing a bone.

Heavy E/A double cream is used to make a dish **heavy**.

Once the delivery of **salmon** was several pounds **light**.

As it gets **oppressively hot** in the kitchen,

all the **steam** and **vapour** from the cooking

mist () **up / cloud** (up) the windows.

The windows **cloud** (up) **with steam / moisture / mist**
as they **mist up / over with condensation**.

To **wipe moist** surfaces like the **steamy / misted** windows,
they use a cloth able to **absorb / retain moisture**.

* let (i smagen) (vin)

* fyldig / kraftig ...

* tung og kalorierig (dessert / kage)

* fuld af / proppet med ngt.

* butterdejskage

* luftigt

* butterdej

...sbagværk

* foretrække ngt. ⇔ at -

* ~ let og kaloriefattig

* sværvægter

tyksak

* ~ tage for sig af retterne

* spise / drikke meget

* en som spiser / drikker meget

* fylde /

prope ngt. med

* voldsom æderi

* ... druk

* normalt

til daglig

* spise lidt / let

* en som ikke spiser / drikker ret mege

* drikke ...

* tung

* fedtholdig

* tage for sig af retterne

* indrette med ngt.

* tilberede >

* tilberede ved varme

* let

* solid måltid

* ... middag

* robust, solidt

* let

* tung, svær

* køkkenudstyr

* =

* =

* køkkeredskab

* =

* =

* gryde

* pande

* kokebog

* opskrift-

* bog

* køkkenchef

* =

* i søvne

* udskære / tranchere >

* kød

* oksekød * kalvekød * svinekød * lammekød * kylling

* steg af ...

* (stegt) steg

* ~ piskefløde (36 %)

* fyldig, ~ kalorierig

* laks (U = pl.)

* i undervægt

* trykkende >

* varmt

* vanddamp efter kogning

* em (synlig masse af væskedråber)

* tildugge ngt.

* dugge til med >

* damp, em

* fugt

* dug (på rude)

* dugge til med >

* kondens (-vand)

* tørre >

* fugtig

* overflade

* dugget (rude)

* opsuge / tilbageholde >

* fugt

448 Making omelettes /A& omelets and scrambled eggs ,	* omelet, æggekage	* & røræg
a cook breaks eggs into a bowl, and, using a fork or a whisk ,	* ~ slå æg op	* i ng. * gaffel * piskeris
he beats the eggs as he beats yolk and white together .	* piske >	* blomme * hvide * sammen
<small>jêuk /A& jelk</small> You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.	* man kan ikke lave æggekage uden at slå æg i stykker (~ hvor er handles, der spildes)	
Breaking eggs and separating the whites from the yolks ,	* ~ slå æg op	* hviderne * blommerne
another cook beats the yolks together with sugar.	* piske >	* blomme * sammen med (sukker)
Beating in the sugar, he beats (up) the paste until frothy .	* piske i ⇔ ng. * ... > * massen (op)	* skummende
Then he whisks the egg whites to a stiff consistency	* piske >	* ægge- * hvide * stiv * konsistens tilstandsform
before he mixes the yolk paste and the stiff white (together)	* blande ng. og ng. (sammen)	
so the mixture of paste and white is still light and fluffy .	* blanding af ng. og ng.	* let * luftig
10 (Today we use (egg) beaters and electric whisks .)	* piskeris / hjulpisker	* ~ elpisker
The cooks have soaked dried fruit in cream sherry .	* ~ iblødsætte >	* tørret * frugt * ~ dessert / * = sød
Dried apricots have been soaking overnight.	* abrikos	* ~ (have) trukket / (været) i blød
A clean spoon is used to spoon the abricots onto a plate,	* ske	* håndtere ng. med ske * over på ng.
and then to spoon a spoon(<ful) of topping onto the abricots.	* skefulde af ng.	* toppingrediens
The cooks use lightly or richly greased pans.	* let	* rigeligt * ~ smurt
Sometimes they spoon melted grease over the food.	* håndtere med ske >	* smeltet * fedt * over ng.
They take care not to be too heavy-handed with the salt,	* overdreven i brug af ng.	
and when they spice () up the food with a strong spice	* krydre ng. (med ng.)	
like pepper, they take care not to go too heavy on the spice.	* bruge meget af ng.	
20 Flies like to alight on foods so the cooks cover () up	* lande på ng.	* tildække ng.
much foodstuff to prevent the flies from lighting on the foods.	* =	
The cooks cook vegetable and meat stock(s) .	* fond (-er)	
It's said that too many cooks spoil the broth ,	* ~ mange kokke fordærver maden (tyk suppe)	
<small>brå#</small> but as many hands make light`work , plenty of waiters	* ~mange hænder gør arbejdet let	
provide a relaxed atmosphere in the banquet room .	* fest- (middag-)	* ~ sal
<small>`bangkwit</small> The festive atmosphere has a benign influence upon	* gunstig	
the spirits of all the guests even upon those of them who	*	
used to feel clumsy , shy and awkward at parties.	* klodset, kluntet	
Smiling benignly , exchanging benevolent looks and smiles,	* venligt og imødekommende	* venlig og ...
30 the guests seem to enjoy each other's company	*	
in benign amusement .	* i >	* venligsindet * munterhed
When a clumsy guest spills his wine, he makes	* klodset, kluntet (person)	
no clumsy attempt to excuse his clumsiness but says,	* ... (forsøg)	
' Sorry - that was clumsy of me, ' when a waiter quickly	* ... af ng.	
uses a dry cloth to soak () up the wine.	* suge / tørre ng. op	
Butterfingers, butter-fingered or cack-handed people,	* fummelfinger	* fummelfingret * ... (person)
are clumsy as their clumsy fingers can't do what they should.	* klodset, kluntet	* ... (fingre)

449 Usually a man takes another man's wife into dinner .	* ~ få / have ng. til borddame
and a woman takes another woman's husband into dinner .	* ... bordherre
Singles (pl.) sit next to singles at dinner .	* enlige * & være ngs. ...
A discussion gets a little heavy .	* blive tung (alvorlig / svær at forstå / kedelig)
So the (dinner) partner finds the discussion heavy`going .	* bordherre / -dame * tung / svær at følge
The neighbour at dinner forgets herself .	* = * forløbe sig
Letting herself being carried away , she sighs deeply	* = * dybt (af kedsomhed)
Rolling her eyes (upwards), she answers heavily .	* rulle med øjnene * sløvt, trevent
She has alternate feelings of boredom and irritation.	* have skiftede følelser af ngt. og ngt. * kedsomhed
10 Her mood alternates between boredom and irritation.	* skifte mellem ngt. og ngt.
Her eyes roll , and her voice is heavily laced with irony.	* ngs. øjne ruller * voldsomt præget af ngt.
There is a loaded`silence .	* trykkende ...
Time hangs / lies`heavy on her hands .	* føle tiden lang kede sig
She laces her fingers together out of sheer boredom	* flette sine fingre * af bar / ren og skær * kedsomhed
as she considers her partner a jerk .	* fjols
The conversation is succeeded by a heavy`silence ,	* ~ pinlig tavshed
and only reluctantly taken up again in a heavy`atmosphere .	* = * i > * ~ en trykket stemning
Time still lies heavy on her hands .	* <<
Once in a while he is waiting for her to say something	* vente på at ng. ...
20 as he expects her to comment on his small talk .	* forvente at ng. ... * ligegyldig snak
His boring talk nearly sends her to sleep .	* få ng. til at falde i søvn
She's bored witless and has to exert herself not to	* kedet til døde * anstrenge sig
yawn sleepily / drowsily .	* gabe * søvnigt
The consumption of wine and coffee laced with brandy	* indtagelse * spædet op med
eventually seems to lighten their moods	* løfte ngt. humør
and lighten their conversation .	* lette samtalen
Water clouds some clear spirits (E).	* grumse ngt. * klar * spirituøs drik gøre ngt. uklart
Some clear liquors (A) cloud when water is added.	* = * blive ...
So some alcoholic drinks are clear and some are cloudy .	* uklar grumset
30 The gentleman sitting next to the lady venture (to tell)	* ~ damens bordherre * driste sig til (at -) ngt.
a hopefully hilarious story to lighten the atmosphere .	* antagelig * vanvittig morsom * lette stemningen
' Please don't stand on ceremony (E), ' the lady requests.	* ~ ikke være formel
Apparently he has lightened the atmosphere	* =
and broken the ice by telling the story as her eyes light up	* bryde isen * øjne > * lyse op >
and her shoulders heave with slightly appreciative laughter .	* skuldre * bevæge sig * let * anerkendende * latter op og ned af >
Their mood lightens , the conversation lightens ,	* lette / stige * lettes
and the whole atmosphere lightens .	* stemning > * løfte sig
At a time, they just sit soaking () up the atmosphere	* ~ indsuge / lade sig gennemstrømme af (atmosfæren)
as the flame of a candle wavers and goes out.	* flamme * flakke

450 The **groom's speech** is full of **wit** and wisdom.

The **groom speech** begins with a few serious subjects,

but gradually it becomes **lighter in tone**.

Written with **delicate light and shade**, the King's

wedding speech reflects his **reputation** for **plain speaking**.

Keeping her **tone light**, the Queen **narrates** both

the **serious** and the **lighter sides** of life at the court.

She's a **witty** speaker, and **relating** the **lighter moments** of her life, her dry **wit has** everybody laughing.

10 At times the Queen **has** the guests **rolling in** the **aisles**.

Her **light-`hearted** speech, **laced with punchlines**,

and **spiced (up) with witty asides receives loud applause**.

Leading () `off the music programme, a **famous, noted**

renowned, and **celebrated piano player leads `off**.
ri`naund

The programme **includes** both **serious** and **light** music.

Playing the piano **with effortless artistry**, the pianist plays

with consummate (attr.) **skill** and **brehtaking virtuosity**.
kên`sûmêt / `kânsêmêt vê~t\$u`âsiti

Famous / noted / renowned as a pianist,

he is **famous / noted / renowned for** his **artistry**,

20 and **alternating touch: lightness** and **gentleness of touch**

alternating with heaviness and **firmness** of touch.

Alternating a light and a heavy touch with **eminent** skill,

the **virtuoso** pianist of great **renown masters the art** of
vê~t\$u`êusêu

effortlessly alternating a delicate touch **with** a firm touch.

Touching music makes some people's **eyes mist over**.

In spite of the fact that he is a famous **composer**

and a **piano virtuoso**, the pianist is a wise and **virtuous** man
`vê~t\$uês
who lives an entirely **virtuous** life.

Even if the pianist **could** play the music **consummately**
kân`sûmitli

30 in his **sleep**, he never feels **virtuous** because of his skills.

There is a few minutes **wait** between the acts.

His **virtuoso** performance **has** his audience **applauding**

loudly / thunderously / rapturously.

The **consummate** performer, composer and virtuoso gets an award which is not given **lightly**.

The royal performance **consummates** his career,
`kânsêmeit
and the award is the **consummation** of his **life's work**.

Having **won renown as** a **versatile musician**,
ri`naun
he doesn't remember to have ever **received light applause**.

* gommens * tale * vid, ~ viden og humor

* ~ brudgomstale

* lettere i tonen

* fine >

* ~ nuancer

* bryllups- * tale * afspejle > * ry for > * ~ klart * tale forståelig

* holde sig til et let tonefald * berette / fortælle om ngt.

* & alvorligere * & oplivende * sider (af livet)

* kvik og vittig * fortælle / berette om ngt. * lysere ...

* vid og humor * få ng. til at -

* få ng. til at > * rulle > * i gangene ~ være ved at falde om af grin

* munter * iblandet / spækket med > * sætning med pointe

* krydret * kvik * side- * modtage / * højt * bifald med > bemærkning få >

* indlede ngt. * berømt * =

* berømt * fejret * klaver- * spiller * indlede

* indbefatte / byde på ngt. * alvorlig * let

* spille > * klaver * ubesværet * kunstnerisk dygtighed

* fuldendt * dygtighed * betagende * virtuositet * kunnen

* berømt som ngt.

* ... for ngt. * kunstnerisk dygtighed

* vekslende * anslag * lethed * forsigtighed * i anslaget

* afveksle med ngt. * kraftfuldhed * fasthed

* skifte mellem ngt. og ngt. * fremragende

* virtuos * berømmelse * mestre kunsten at -

* ubesværet * lade ngt. afveksle med ngt. skifte mellem ngt. og ngt.

* rørende * ~ få tårer i øjnene

* komponist

* klaver- * virtuos * anstændig retskaffen

* =

* kunne > * fuldendt

* gøre ngt. i søvne * selvretfærdig

* venten ventetid

* virtuos * få ng. til at - * bifalde

* højt * tordnende bragende * henrykt vildt begejstret

* fuldendt

* skødesløst uden vægtig grund * fuldbyrde ngt.

* fuldbyrkelse af ngt. * livs- * værk

* vinde > * berømmelse som ngt. * alsidig * musiker

* modtage / få > * let / spredt * bifald

451 Even if the room is **brightly lit**, one of the musicians
reads the **notes in bad light**.

Realizing he is **standing in his own light**, he moves
into the light, and **brings** his notes **into the light** so he can
see the head, stem and hook / pennant of the notes **clearly**.

Somebody is **standing in** another one's **light**.

So he asks politely, ' Could you move a little to the left –
you **are (standing) in my light**.'

Playing the music with **delicate light and shade**,
10 the **`orchestra** wins **thunderous** applause.

The audience applaud **thunderously**.

A **lightning artist** wins **loud applause**.

Later in the evening there is a **light** dance.

Joining in the dance and **joining in** the fun,
the guests **join hands** and dance round and round.

Everytime dancers **step out with fatigue**, others **join in**.
fê`ti-g

The **indefatigable** queen **treads**, walks and dances **lightly**.

She likes best **light** music, **light opera** and **light comedy**.

She never answers **lightly**, though.

20 The servants had been told to **leave the light on**,
and **leave the light burning** the whole night **if required**.

Usually they just **leave a light on** in the kitchen.

Many of the guests are **indefatigable**
- `fa -
so the rest of the party **go on (partying) indefatigably**
while the newly married couple retire.

Clearing the tables, and **keeping the lights on** all night,
the servants **clear up after** the guests.

The whole area is **lit up** by the palace.

Only a few guests are invited to **sleep `over** so all night

30 there are vehicles **waiting for** the rest of the guests.

Having been **waiting with** their carriages and coaches
to bring the guests home, the **coachmen crack their whips**
one after another / the other, to make the horses start pulling.

The **dew** may **fall** during the night, and in the mornig,
the **dewy** landscape may be **shrouded in mist**.

Dewdrops glint / sparkle in the morning sunlight,
and, as the sun rises, early morning **mist patches clear**.

As the sun **glints on** the **dewy** grass, **glints** of silver
reflect from the grass **wet with dew**.

* klart > * oplyst
* læse > * node * i dårligt lys
* skygge for sig selv
* flytte sig ind i ... * bringe ngt. ...
* se > * hoved * stilk * krog / flag * klart, tydeligt
~ hals ~ fane
* stå i ngs. lys, ~ tage lyset fra ng.
*
* ~ tage lyset fra ng.
* fine > * ~ nuancer
* orkester * tordende
* bragende
* lyn- / hurtigtegner * få kraftig bifald
* uhøjtidelig
* slutte sig til ngt.
* tage hinanden i hænderne
* træde ud * af træthed * give sig til at være med
* utrættelig * træde * let, forsigtigt, skødesløst
adræt, elegant
* let * operette * lystspil
* skødesløst
ligegyldigt
* lade lyset brænde
* = * hvis / om påkrævet
* efterlade > * et lys tændt
& lade et lys brænde
* utrættelig
* fortsætte (* med at feste) * utrætteligt
*
* ~ rydde af > * bordene * ~ lade lysene brænde
* rydde op efter ng.
* oplyse ngt.
* overnatte
* vente på ng.
* ... med ngt.
* kusk * knalde / smælde (med) > * pisk
* en efter en / den ene efter den anden
* duggen > * falder
* dugget * hyldet i > * dis
* dugdråbe * glimte + adv.
* dis * flage * gå i opløsning
~ flager af dis
* glimte på ngt. * dugget * glimt af ngt.
dugvåd
* våd af dug

452 Not until the **first light** appears, and **gleam on**
the windows of the palace, the servants **put out the light**.

They must remember to **put** all the **lights out**,
and check that all the **lights are out**.

Some **lights go out** by themselves.

As the morning sun **glints on** the open windows,
and the windows **glint in** the sun (<light), the servants
fasten the windows **surely** so that they do not **blow open**.

If a window won't **fasten**, it must be repaired.

10 It may need new **fasteners / fastenings**.

A pair of **shutters** are **fastened** in front of a window
to keep out the light, and **fastened back** later on.

Some servants **sleep`in** while others **sleep`out**.

The servants **keep** breakfast **waiting for** the guest
who **stayed over`night / stayed the night / stayed over**.

Though the palace only **sleeps** 50 guests,
they manage to **bed down** 20 more guests.

Later in the morning or later in the day, some guests
who **slept`in, slept`late or over`slept** just have something
20 light for breakfast before they leave.

'Are you **nearly ready** to leave?' a guest asks his wife.

'I'm ready when you are,' she answers.

Waking up **with a hangover, having** a terrible **hangover**,
one of the guests **stays in bed** all day.

Looking forward to going home to **go** and **soak in** the **bath**,
he'll have a long **soak**.

The **launderers** or **washers** (mostly **laundresses**
or **washerwomen**) bring all the **laundry** to the **laundry room**
where they **do** the **laundry / launder** the **clothes**.

30 They **soak** the laundry / E& **washing** before they wash it

They **give** the laundry a **good soak**.

They **leave** it to **soak** in water with **washing soda** for hours
to allow the soda to **soak** () **off** dirt and filth.

After washing, when the laundry has **dried**
and been **folded** (up), there's a **pile** of **ironing** to be done.

Using an **iron**, they start **doing** the **ironing**.

Busy **ironing**, busy **ironing** all the laundry,
they have to **iron** () **out** all **creases**.

* første morgenlys

* give genskin på ngt.

* slukke >

* lyset

* ... lysene

* lys (-ene) er slukket

* ... gå ud

* glimte på ngt.

* glimte i ngt.

* lukke ngt.

* forsvarligt

* blæse op

* fæstne

* lukkemekanisme

* skodde

* (blive) fæstnet

* (blive) fastgjort tilbage

* have sovekarter der på stedet

* ... andetsteds

* holde ngt. parat

* overnatte

* kunne have ng. sovende

* give ng. sengeleje

* senere om morgenen
~ om formiddagen

* & op ad dagen

* sove længe

* =

* ... over sig

*

* ~ ved at være parat

*

* med tømmermænd

* have ...

* blive >

* i sengen

* ~ gå i bad og lade sig gennembløde

* gennemblødning

* vaskeperson

* =

* vaskekone

* =

* vasketøj

* vaskerum

* ~ gøre tøjvaskearbejdet

* ~ vaske og klargøre tøjet

* ~ iblødsætte ngt.

* vasketøj

* give ngt. >

* en god gennemvædning
~ en god gang iblødsætning

* ~ lade ngt. >

* gennemblødes

* vaske-

* soda

* udbløde ngt.

* (vasketøj) tørre

* ~ lægge ngt. sammen

* stabel af >

* tøj til strygning

* strygejern

* klare >

* strygning

* stryge

* ... ngt.

* ~ bortstryge ngt.

* fold

453 The newly married couple sleep through.

Sleeping through all kinds of **disturbance(s)**,

they manage to **sleep through** the morning

Waking up **late in the morning without hangovers**,

they have **slept right through** till lunchtime.

The Queen never thought of **wiping** () **off** her make-up.

Even if tears of joy have **smudged** the queen's mascara,
and her lipstick has **smudged**, the King finds her so attractive
that he **showers** her **with** kisses.

10 Instead of **breakfast** and **lunch** the newly-weds have
brunch in bed.

They **jerk / pull at** the **servant's bell** and **wait**.

The kitchen staff has been **waiting for** the **bellpull to** ring.

After a while there is a **light tap at / on** the door.

The **waiting-maid** (o-f) must **knock** before she **enters**.

She **taps lightly / gently at / on** the **door**.

The King and Queen **miss** the tapping.

There is then a loud **knock at / on** the door,
and after a **suitable time** there's a **sharp rap at / on** the door

20 as she first **knocks** then **raps at / on** the door.

Having been allowed to come in, she **jerks** the door **open**
and comes into the room carrying a **loaded tray**.

The tray is **loaded with all that the heart could desire**.

They have a **big** brunch.

They **smear** butter **on** the bread.
smiê

Having **smeared** the bread **with** butter,

they **smear strawberry jam over** the butter.

Jam is stored in a jam **jar** of **earthenware** (or glass).

They can have tea and coffee with **coffee cream** EA /

30 single E/A light cream, or **double cream**.

Tea and coffee are stored in **tea** and **coffee jars**,
or in tea and coffee **canisters** (E& a (tea) **caddy**).

A **teapot** and a **coffee pot** each with a **handle**, a **spout**,
and a **lid** are used for making and serving tea and coffee,

A **tea strainer** and a **coffee filter bag** are used to separate
the **tea leaves** and the **coffee grounds** from the extract.

Coffee is **poison** to some people.

* nygifte	* sove igennem
* sove fra ngt.	* forstyrrelse(r)
* ... hele vejen gennem	
* & om formiddagen	* uden tæmmermænd
* sove igennem lige til	
* tørre (make-up) af	
* udtvære ngt.	
* blive tværet ud	
* overøse ng. med ngt.	
* morgenmad	* frokost
* frokost og morgenmad samtidig	* i sengen
* trække i ngt.	* klokkestreng
* vente på ngt. at -	* klokkestreng
* let	* bank på
* kammerpige	* banke på
* banke	* let
* overhøre ngt.	* træde / komme ind
* bank på ngt.	* på døren
* passende	* tidsrum
* banke på (døren)	* hårdt
* ~ pufte (døren) op	* bank (- en) på ngt.
* fyldt	* ... gentagende gange
* belæsset med ngt.	* ~ pufte (døren) op
* stor	* fyldt
* smøre / tvære ngt. ud på ngt.	* bakke
* smøre ngt. med ngt.	* belæsset med ngt.
* ... ngt. >	* alt hvad hjertet kan begære
* krukke	* jordbær
* kaffebløde	* syltetøj
* =	* marmelade
* te- / kaffe-	* over ngt.
* dåse	* lertøj
* tepotte	* kaffekande
* låg	* håndtag
* tesi	* kaffe
* te- blade	* filter
* den rene gift	* pose
	* ~ kaffepose
	* kaffe-
	* ~grums

454 The King and Queen relate the events of the day before .	* berette / sammenholde ngt.	* begivenhed	* fra dagen før ~ gårsdagens
Their minds are loaded with memories / recollections .	* fuld af >		* erindringer minder
Their memory is burdened by a hotchpotch eE/A	* tyrnet / belastet af ngt.	* sammensurium af ngt.	
burdened with a hodgepotch of events.	* =		
No matter the jumble of events makes their brain reel ,	* sammensurium	* det til at køre rundt i hovedet	
and the ragbag (E) of memories makes their head swim ,	* =		* =
the chief events of the eventful wedding stand out clearly.	* hovedbegivenhed	* begivenhedsrig	* skille sig ud
They talk about the highlights of yesterday's events ;	* højdepunkt		* gårsdagen's ...
the highlights of the speeches and the entertainment.	* =		
10 They are pleased by the burden of most speeches.	* hovedvægten, grundtanken		
They don't burden, encumber or trouble their minds	* bebyrde >	* =	* besvære >
with flatteries as they let insincere praise	* med >	* tomme smigrende bemærkninger	* uærlig
go in (through / at) one ear and out (of / at) the other.	* gå ind ad det ene øre og ud ad det andet		
A few events are just a blur , contrary to the wedding night	* være>	* uklar masse	* bryllupsnatten
which they eagerly highlight as the event of the day .	* kaste lys på / fremhæve ngt.	* dagens højdepunkt	
Having lit the wick , the King had lit a lamp .	* tænde >	* væge	* = >
The wick had lit at once, and when the lamp lit up ,			* lampe
the King helped her (to) unfasten her dress.	* tænde begynde at brænde		* lyse op
He lit her to bed with light footsteps	* lukke ngt. op		
20 holding the lamp at arm's length .	* løsne / løsgøre ngt.		
Everything looked grey in the dim light of the flame / lamp.	* lyse ng. vej til ngt.		* lette trin
' Come to my arms , ' the Queen whispered.	* ud i strakt arm		
He didn't keep her waiting in bed.	* svagt lys dunkel skær		
The King smeared scented oil on his hands,	* kom i mine arme		
and smeared the fragrant oil all over her expectant body.	* lade ng. vente		
As he smeared the Queen with the oil, the air became	* smøre ngt. på ngt.		* parfumeret
fragrant with scents from the oil.	* ... ud over	* velduftende	* forventningsfuld
Having the requisite of / for tact, and having a light hand ,	* indsmøre ngt. med ngt.		
the King had consummated the marriage	* velduft		
30 with consummate tact and light movements .	* have * fornødent element af / * ~ være let på hånden		
Talking in whispers , they had no secrets from each other.	grundlag for ngt. behændig, taktfuld		
In bed, there are no dark secrets between them,	* fuldbyrde ngt.		
and between them a promise will never be broken lightly .	* fuldendt	* finfølelse	* let / forsigtig
Smeared with oil, their bodies had touched lightly ,			* bevægelse
and soon their secret parts had joined in love .	* tale >	* ~ med hviskende stemmer	* have hemmeligheder for ng.
With requisite tact, he had fulfilled her lightests wish .	* dystert / skummelt ...		
Having used () up the last of their energy,	* ~ uden videre / tankeløst		
they had both been on cloud `nine .	* indsmurt i ngt.	* berøre hinanden	* let forsigtigt
	* kønsdele	* forene sig / -s	* i kærlighed
	* fornøden (takt)	* opfyld >	* mindste ønske
	* opbrugt >	* det sidste af (deres energi)	
	* være >	* ~ i den syvende himmel	

455 A tiresome and tiring clean(-)up awaits the servants.	* besværlig	* trættende	* oprydning	* vente ng.
The whole palace is (in) a mess ; all the rooms are untidy .	* roderi (det roder i ...)		rengøring	* rodet
The Lord Chamberlain of the Household has the task of	* hofmarchal		* have til opgave at -	
managing the court.	*			
So it's his business to set the domestics to work .	* ngs. opgave	* sætte ng. >	* tjener	* i gang
Domestic servants must be tidy people with tidy habits.	/ hverv at -		pl. tyende	med at -
The staff of servants takes care that the palace is kept tidy ,	* person, der arbejder	* pæn og ordentlig	* =	
especially that the royal apartments are kept neat and tidy .	i huset / pl. tjenestefolk			
The royal gardeners keep the gardens and flower beds tidy .	* tyendet		* ordentlig, ryddelig	
10 The staff starts (E& start) work (U) early in the morning,	* gemak	* net, pæn	* =	
It starts / they start on it's / their work with determination.	* gartner		* =	
Setting about the business of clearing and cleaning	* begynde på / gå i gang med >			* arbejdet
every place in the palace, everybody sets to .	* ... sit ...			
Setting about their work, the servants set about	* gå i gang med /	* arbejde /	* rydde >	* rengøre >
cleaning and tidying (up) after the guests.	begynde på ngt.	hverv med at -		
As they start clearing up and cleaning up ,	* sted		* gå ivrigt i gang	
they start to clear () up and clean () up all the mess	* begynde på ngt.		* ... at -	
in order to tidy () up , clear () up , and clean () up	* gøre rent	* rydde op	* efter ng.	
all the untidy , messy , and chaotic places.	* rydde op		* gøre rent	
20 The dirty floors are smeared with spills of food and drink.	* rydde ngt. op	* =	* rod, roderi	
The smudged and smeared windows and mirrors	* ordne ngt.	* ordne / rengøre ngt.	* =	
are smudged and smeared with fingerprints.	* uordentlig	* rodet	* =	
Smudgy and smeary windows and mirrors are waiting to	* beskidt	* tilsvinet med ngt.	* ~ spildt	
be cleaned .	* tilplettet		* tilfedtet	
In the messy kitchen, dirty and greasy pots and pans,	* ... med ngt.		* ... med ngt.	
stacks of plates, smeared with grease, gravy, and sauce,	* tilplettet >	* tilfedtet (vindue / spejl)	* vente på at -	
are all waiting to be cleaned / washed together with a lot	* blive rengjort, ~ pudset			
of smudgy glasses, smudged with fingerprints and lipstick.	* rodet	* beskidt	* fedtet	
Smears and smudges of lipstick are difficult to remove.	snævset	snævset		
30 Tidying (up), cleaning () (up), clearing () up the kitchen,	* stak	* indsmurt i /	* fedt	* sovs
the kitchen domestics tidy () away the kitchenware,	snævset til med ngt.		(af kødsaft)	* sovs
clear and clean the dirty kitchen tables ,	* vaske ngt. op			
tidy (up) the kitchen range , and tidy () up the cupboards .	* tilsmudset		* tilsmudse ngt. med ngt.	
They give the tables a thorough wipe .	* plamager		* ... af ngt.	
Wiping () down) all the tables, they wipe () up all spill(s) .	* gøre ngt. i orden	* rydde op og gøre rent i ngt.		
They sweep the filthy floor with a broom ,	* rydde ngt. væk			
and brush the dust into a dustpan before they wash the floor.	* rydde >	* rengøre >	* beskidt	* bord
When the floor is cleaned , the untidy , messy , chaotic	* ordne >	* ~ brændekomfur	* ... >	* skab
and filthy kitchen finally ends up clean and tidily arranged .	* give ngt. en aftørring			
	* tørre ngt.	* ... ngt. op	* spildte sager	
	(... i bund m. fugtig klud)			
	* feje ngt.		* meget beskidt	
	* børste >	* skidt	* ~ op på >	* fejebakke / -blad
	* gøre ngt. rent	* uordentlig	* =	* =
	* meget beskidt	* ren	* ordentligt	* ryddet op

456 The royal couple don't get out of bed till late in the day .	* ~ komme ud af fjerene	* sent på / op ad dagen
Their bed is untidy , their dirty clothes lie in an untidy heap on the dirty floor, and their hair is untidy .	* uordentlig	* beskidt * = * bunke dyng
The King's chamberlain , the Lord-in-`Waiting or Lord of the Bedchamber attends the King	* kammerherre	* konges / prins' ...
while a lady's maid , the lady-in-`waiting , waits on the Queen.	* =	* opvarte ng.
The queen keeps her dressing table / A& vanity tidy .	* kammerpige	* dronnings / prinsesses ...
She keeps some toilet requisites neatly on the table,	* holde ngt.	* toiletbord * ryddeligt
and keeps other toilettries tidily in the drawers.	* opbevare >	* toiletsager * ordentligt, sirligt i nydelig orden
10 As soon as the royal couple have left the untidy bedroom ,	* =	* i pæn orden
the chars , charladies and charwomen set about tidying up .	* uordentlig	* soveværelse / -gemak
They tidied (up) and cleaned the bedchamber (o-f)	* rengøringskone	* = * = * gå i gang * rydde op med at -
from top to bottom , before they clean the windows .	* rydde op i ngt.	* sovegemak * & i alle ender og kanter
The dirty sheets are smeared with oily, greasy, viscous ,	* ~ pudse >	* vinduer
and wet substances and smudged with lipstick and powder.	* beskidt * lagen * snavse / * oliet * fedtet * flydende	
Doing the cleaning , the maid takes care of	* snavset * snaske til med ngt.	
the smudgy sleepwear , night clothes or nightwear ,	* våd	* stof * =
and the smeary sheets full of smears and smudges :	* gøre rent	
smears and smudges of butter, jam and oil etc.	* beskidt * nattøj, -kåbe * nattøj * =	
20 Changing the soiled bedding – the bedclothes /	* snavset	* morgen-, etc
E& the (bed>) covers – she makes the bed	* =	* plamager * =
with clean bedlinen , clean sheets between the mattress	* =	* = * syltetøj marmelade
and the blankets , and clean pillowcases for the pillows .	* beskidt * sengetøj * sengetøj	* sengetøj
She covers the bed with a bedspread / E& bedcover ,	* sengelinned	* rede seng
and puts a couple of plump cushions at the head of the bed .	* tæppe	* madras
She tidies () away the clean clothes which do not need	* dække ngt. med ngt	* hovedpude
washing, and tidies () up the royal couple's wardrobes .	* fyldig og blød	* hovedpude
Loaded down / weighed down / laden with a heap of	* pude	* ~ hovedenden
laundry in her arms she leaves a tidy bedchamber	* rydde ngt. væk	* rent (tøj)
30 carrying a feather duster under her arm .	* rydde op i >	* garderobe / -skab
The wedding cost a tidy sum.	* ~ tungt belæsset med >	* bunke (af) >
The newly married couple want to spend their honeymoon	* vasketøj	* i sine arme
by the sea , at a lovely place at / by / on the sea .	* ~ støvekost af fjer	* under armen
So they go to the seaside (eE) for / on their honeymoon .	* betragtelig / net (sum)	
They honeymoon at / by the seaside .	* tilbringe >	* hvedebrødsdage, bryllupsrejse
The feel their honeymoon passes fast / very quickly .	* ved havet	
While the honeymooners are on their honeymoon ,	* tage (ud) til >	* kysten * på bryllupsrejse
a highly trusted staff take care of the daily routine at the palace.	* holde bryllupsrejse	* ved kysten / havet
	* bryllupsrejse	* gå hurtigt * =
	* bryllupsrejsende	* være på ...

457 The **workload lightens** after the wedding.

Having the meals regularly **waiting for** the royal couple,
the kitchen **has** breakfast, lunch, dinner or supper **waiting**.

'What's for dinner or supper?' the King often asks.

'**Wait and see**,' the queen replies to **keep** him **waiting**
in suspense if there's **something** unexpected **waiting** –
if there's perhaps a nice **surprise** waiting **for** him.

Sometimes the King is **long in coming**.

He may be **a long time coming**.

10 If he **gets home** late in the evening or late at night,
the queen often **waits** **up**, **waiting up for** him.

'I'm sorry I'm late – I'm sorry for having **kept** you **waiting**,'
the King says **apologetically**, happy to **be home**.
êpâlé`dʃetikéli

The Queen looks forward to **get in** the **family way**.

Soon the queen is **expecting**: **expecting a baby / child**.

The parents **expect** their **first** in **March**.

The **expectant** parents look forward to the **happy event**.

The **consummation** of the marriage is soon visible.

The **expectant** mother's growing **abdomen betrays**
`abdémên / ab`dêu -

20 the fact that she is **pregnant** – **pregnant with** their first
possibly **conceived on** their **wedding night**.

At a time when the queen is **heavily pregnant**,
her **eyes feel heavy with fatigue**.

Although it's only afternoon, she feels **sleepy / drowsy**.

Drifting off, she **drifts off to sleep** for a moment.

As her **joints** feel **stiff**, she enjoys to **doze on** a **couch**.

Having **drowsed on** a **sofa** /E& **settee** for a while,
she wakes up only to **drop** **off to sleep** again.

Realizing she **nods off to sleep**, the **expectant** father
30 asks her, 'Why don't you **go and have a sleep** (E)?'

'**Go to bed** – you're sick,' he repeats –

'you'll **feel / be all the better for a good night's sleep**.'

Breathing heavily, and feeling **light-headed**,
she **goes off to sleep** as soon as she's **snug in bed**.

Having a fever, the queen **drifts into a profound sleep**.

As he hears a **snore**, the king knows she's fallen asleep.

Having **got a bad cold**, she is **in bed with a heavy cold**.

Having **fallen into a deep sleep**, she **snores heavily**.

* arbejdsbyrde

* mindskes

* have ngt. stående og vente (på ng.)

* have >

* aftensmad

* ventende

*

* vent og se

* lade ng. vente

* i spænding

* noget (uventet)

* ventende

* ... på ng.

* være længe om at komme
lade vente på sig

* =

* komme hjem

* sidde oppe og vente

* ... på ng.

* lade ng. vente

* undskyldende

* være hjemme

* ~ komme i lykkelige omstændigheder

* vente sig (barn)

* vente (barn)

* første

* i / til marts

* vordende

* glædelig begivenhed
familieførelse

* fuldbyrdelse af (ægteskab)

* vordende
gravid

* maveregion

* afsløre >

* (det fak

* gravid

* ... med ng.

* undfange ng.

* højgravid

* øjne, ~ øjenlåg føles tunge >

* af træthed

* søvnig / døsigt

* døse hen

* ... og falde i søvn

* led

* stiv

* døse / slumre

* på >

* sofa

* døse / slumre

* =

* ~ døse hen

* =

* ~ vordende (far)

* tage sig en lur

* gå i seng

* få det meget bedre efter en god nats søvn

* ånde / trække vejret tungt

* svimmel
ør, uklar

* falde i søvn

* være > komfortabel

* i seng

* have feber

* glide ind i >

* meget dyb søvn

* snork

* få en > * slem forkølelse * ligge i sengen med > * =

* falde i ...

* snakke tungt

458 The King joins her at her sickbed as much as possible.	* slutte sig til / komme og være sammen med ng.	* sygeleje
Looking at the snorer with utmost affection , the King	* snorkende person	* hengivenhed ømhed, kærlighed
listens to her snore s with acute , intense , and deep anxiety .	* snork * stærk * intens * dyb	* bekymring
Heavy and laboured breathing and heavy snoring ,	* tungt > * besværet * åndedræt * tung snorken højt og dybt	
interrupted by a heavy groan or heavy sigh , are succeeded	* afbrudt af * tung * støn * ... suk * efterfulgt af ngt.	
by periods when she breathes at a fast pace , short of breath .	* ånde hurtigt	* kort- / stakåndet
Fortunately, as her breathing eases and gets better ,	* åndedræt * lettes	* blive bedre
she drifts into a light sleep, now just accompanied by	*	
her gentle snoring .	* let snorken	
10 Getting better , she tries to make`light of the situation,	* få det bedre, ~ komme sig	* ~ tage sig ngt. let
but the King can tell that she is worried.	*	
The King only had a slight attack of (common) cold .	* være ramt af / udsat for > * mildt * angreb af ...	
As he only has / suffers from a slight cold ,	* let, mild	* forkølelse
he just now and then rolls himself (up) in a blanket.	* ~ pakke sig ind i (tæppe)	
During her pregnancy , like many other pregnant women,	* graviditet	* gravid
the Queen acquires a taste for special kinds of food.	* få smag for ngt.	
When she's better she has an irrepressible	* kommet sig	* uimodståelig
and uncontrollable desire to eat (a) round the clock .	* ukontrollabel * ønske / trang til at -	* på alle tidspunkter døgnet rundt
' How heavy am I ? – how much do you think I weigh ? –	* tung	* veje ngt.
20 I feel two times heavier than I used to be,' she jokes.	* tungere end -	
The King never makes light of her difficulties or worries.	* lade hånt om / bagatellisere ngt.	
' I'm glad you here – I could do with a little light relief ,'	* noget at ånde lettet op ved	
the queen assures.	*	
Fortunately, having recovered quickly,	* komme sig	
the Queen is soon back in the saddle .	* i >	* sadlen
Childbirth (U) is an event which always involves	* ~ i fuld kontrol	
considerable risks.	*	
A baby may be delivered by a Caesarean / < ian (`section),	* kejsersnit	
a surgical operation in which the baby is delivered through	* kirurgisk operation	
30 an incision made in the abdominal wall and the womb	* (ind-) snit * bugvæg	* livmoder skød
so called because Julius Caesar was said to have	*	
been born in this way.	*	
Caesarean (section) is an abnormal delivery, employed	* anormal, abnorm	
when a foetus / fetus cannot be delivered through the vagina	* foster	* & skede
for instance because it is abnormally positioned	* unormalt	* positioneret bragt i stilling
or is too large to pass through the birth canal .	* ~ fødselsvejene	
In the old days, before an(a)esthetic drugs were invented ,	* bedøvelsesmiddel	* (blev) opfundet
the woman was awake during the operation.	* vågen	

459 Fear of **complication(s)** and fears for the lives and safety *

of both mother and child easily **cast a cloud over** a childbirth. * kaste en skygge over ngt.

The queen's smile **betrays the fact that** her happiness is * ... (det faktum) at -

consummated when a **fine healthy** baby boy * fuldbrydet * fin * sund

sees the light on a **lazy / drowsy** afternoon in April. * ~ komme til verden ~ velskab * doven / søvnig

It was quite an event, and then on April 1st (**the first**). E /

* noget af en begivenhed

* den ...

on 1st (**the first of**) April E / A: on April 1 (first).

* =

They all need a little **light relief** at the end of the **delivery**.

* let * aflastning, lettelse

* fødsel

It was certainly no **April `fool**,

~ noget at ånde lettet op ved
* aprilsnar

10 and no one **makes an April fool of** them this year.

* lave ... med ng.

The mother **puts** the **baby** to the **breast**.

* lægge ng. til sit bryst

When she has **given** the **baby** the **breast**,

* give ng. ...

the **sleepyhead** often **falls asleep**.

* sovetryne

* falde i søvn

Usually **falling into deep sleep**, he **sleeps deeply**.

* falde i dyb søvn

* sove tungt

Sometimes the mother's arm or leg **goes to sleep**.

* give sig til at sove

When an arm or leg **is asleep** she changes position.

* ~ sove

A **new-born** baby is usually a **heavy `sleeper**.

* nyfødt

* en, der sover tungt

Sleeping heavily, the baby **sleeps (a)round the clock**.

* sove tungt

* ... døgnet rundt

The baby has **startling dark blue** eyes.

* klar (om farve)

* mørkeblå

20 When mother and child **are fast asleep** and **sleep well**,

* sove fast (sovende)

* sove godt

the father takes care not to **wake** them **up** –

* vække ng.

they must **have** their **sleep `out**.

* ~ få sovet ud

He often **lays** his child **to sleep**.

* lægge ng. til at sove / & i seng

The baby is **light as a feather** .

* let som en fjær

When he **put** his child **to bed**, he **puts** him **to sleep**.

* lægge ng. i seng

* <<

Although the baby is a(n) **(a)round-the-clock sleeper**,

* en, der sover døgnet rundt

it doesn't **sleep through** – it doesn't **sleep through** the night.

* sove igennem

A child may **sleep badly** and **wake up** crying.

* ... dårligt

* vågne

An **erupting** tooth may cause pain.

* frembrydende

30 `Baby teeth / E& milk teeth erupt during early childhood.

* bryde frem

The **set of baby teeth** is replaced by a set of

* sæt mælketænder

permanent teeth.

* blivende ...

Much of the parents' life **revolves around** their child.

* dreje sig / handle om ngt.

Having a baby certainly **adds** a lot of **spice to** their **lives**.

* ~ sætte (en masse) krydderi på ngs. tilværelse

At a time they have to **wean** the baby.

* vænne ng. `fra

Little by little, the baby must be **weaned from suckling**.

* ... fra at -

* die

So **weaned off** its **feeds**, it's **weaned off** a fluid **diet**,

* ... fra > * ~ babymælkemåltid

* - - - > * føde

and **weaned onto** solid food,

* ... ng. til ngt.

460 Having **put on / gained weight** the Queen is

a true **heavyweight**, **several** kilos **heavier than** she was.

The King, on the contrary, has **lost weight** –

he's a **lightweight** just a few kilos **lighter than** he was.

Going on a diet, the Queen **diets** to lose weight.

So she **sticks to a light diet** and **light** meals,

while the King has a **heavier** diet and **bigger** meals.

The Queen is soon well enough to **do** a little **light exercise**
so she regularly **takes** (E) **light** exercise.

10 The baby boy is equally **beloved by / of** both parents.

Although the parents themselves spent much time

taking care of their **beloved** child, a **nurse** (<maid) is hired
bi' lûvid
to **reduce** the Queen's **workload**.

Usually the nurse changes the baby's **dirty nappy** E/A

diaper soiled with liquid and semi-solid **waste**.

On order to keep the **offensive odour** away from her nose,
she **holds** the **soiled** nappy / diaper **at arm's length**.

The nurse must be a **light sleeper**

Drifting or **falling into** a **light sleep** or **light doze**,

20 and **sleeping lightly** she is able to **wake up lightly**
from her **light sleep**.

While she **carries** and **cradles** the baby **in her arms**
the parents can **sleep through** it all.

During their **waking hours** the parents regularly ask,
Has the baby **woken (up)** yet – **has** he **wakened (up)** –
has he **awakened** yet.

As they don't intend to **waken** the baby (**up**), they keep

'**emphasizing**,' Don't **waken up** the baby – don't **awaken** him

If the sick child **wakes up with a start**, and cries for

30 his mother or father, they may only **get** a few **hours' sleep**.

Sometimes they **pass a sleepless** night worrying
as they spend a **wakeful** night worrying about their child.

Normally they don't **need** many **hours' sleep**.

Yet, when they sometimes don't **get to sleep**,

and **pass a wakeful** night, they really **feel sleepy**,
and **look sleepy** in the morning.

A **splash of** cold water in the face usually **wakes** them **up**;
it often has to **wake up** the sleepy parents.

* tage på > * (i) vægt

* sværvægter * flere * tungere end -
tungere end gennemsnittet adskillige
* tabe sig

* letvægter * lettere
lettere end gennemsnittet
* gå på > * diet / slankekur * spise diæt
~ særlig kost
* holde sig til * kaloriefattig * kost, føde * let
diæt lille
* kalorierig * stor

* lave > * let * træning, ~ motion
* - - -

* elsket af ng.

*

* elskede (barn) * barneplejerske

* reducere / mindske > * arbejdsbyrde

* beskidt * ble

* = * tilsvinet med ngt. * ~ afføring

* modbydelig * stank

* holde > * beskidt (ble) * ud i strakt arm

* en, der sover let

* glide (ind i) * falde i * let søvn * ... døs

* sove let * vågne let

* let søvn

* bære / holde ngt. * vugge ngt. * i sine arme

* sove fra ngt.

* vågne * timer, ~ tid

* vågne * =

* =

* vække ng.

* indskærpe * = * =

* vågne (op) > * med et sæt

* få (nogle få) timers søvn

* tilbringe * en søvnløs (nat)
~ ligge søvnløs (hele natten)

* vågen (nat)

* behøve mange timers søvn

* falde i søvn, få sovet

* tilbringe * en vågen (nat) * føle sig søvngig
~ ligge vågen (hele natten)
* se søvngig ud

* sjask (vand) * gøre ng. mere vågen

* =

461 Most people talk in their **sleep**.

Some people **sleepwalk**; they **walk** while **asleep**.

Suffering from **sleepwalking** also called **somnambulism**.

If a **sleeper** walks in his **sleep**, the **sleep-walker** should just be **taken by the arm** and guided back to bed.

Awake or **asleep**, the **babe in `arms** (o-f) is **the light of** his parents' **eyes**.

One day the **infant in arms** or **child in arms** will be **light of foot**, perhaps a **light-footed rascal**,
10 noisy and **mischievous**, and difficult to **master**.
' Will he **eventually be a burden to** us, **unruly**,
ungovernable, and **unmanageable** ? ' the King asks,

- ' Will he **make enough noise to wake the dead** ? '

' **Wait and see**, ' the queen answers.

' Will he need a **firm hand**, ' the king goes on.

' **Let us wait and see**. '

Some adults find it difficult to **relate to** children.

The personal and social development of the child **are** strongly and **inextricably linked**.

20 Strong family ties **link** a family **together**.

A child learns how to **link** words **to** objects, action(s)

and **conception(s)** / **concepts**.
kên`sep\$`n(z)

Showering their love (up)on their children,

the parents **distance** themselves from **heavy-`handed** **child-rearing methods** / **methods of upbringing**.

They **dissociate** themselves from **harsh punishment**.
di`sêu\$`ieit

As they **disavow** cruel, severe and unkind punishment
disê`wau

they **take** vigorous **exception to** harsh punishment.

So they are not too **heavy on** their children.

30 They would never **crown** them **with** a **heavy blow**,
or **give** them a (**sharp**) **rap on / over / across the knuckles**.
`nûkêls

They agree only to **crown** them **with** a **light blow**.

If they find it necessary to **rap** their **knuckles**

as a punishment, they just **give** them a **light rap** **on / over / across the knuckles**.

Parents who expect their children to be a **paragon of virtue**,
and their upbringing to be **problem-free** and **unproblematic**
may **be in for** a **rude awakening**.

Some people are **weaned on** (a diet of) **rigid discipline**.

* i søvne

* gå i søvne

* =

* søvngænger

* =

* sovende

* i søvne

* søvngænger

* tage ng. i armen

* vågen * sovende * barn, der ikke er begyndt at gå

* ~ øjsten

* <<

* let til bens

* =

* slubbert

* ondsindet

* ~ være herre over

~ drillesyg (om børn)

* sluttelig * være en byrde for

* uregerlig

muligvis

* =

* =

* ~ støje som ind i helvede

* ~ det vil vise sig

* fast hånd

* & se tiden an

* forholde sig til ng.

*

* være >

* uløseligt

* forbundet

* knytte ng. / ngt. sammen

* =

* undfangelse, opfattelse,
ide, begreb

* ide, begreb

* ~ overøse ng. med ngt.

* lægge afstand til ngt.

* børneopdragelses- * metode * = ⇔ * opdragelses-

* tage afstand fra /
nægte at støtte ngt.

* streng, grusom
skånselsløs

* & nægte at vedkende sig ngt.

* tage >

* (kraftig) afstand fra ngt.

* streng mod ng.

* ~ give ng. en (ordentlig en) på hovedet

* give ng. et (hårdt) rap /
en (ordentlig en) over nallerne

* ~ slå ng. oven i hovedet * med > * let * slag

* ~ give ng. nogen over nallerne

* som (en) straf

* give ng. >

* let

* rap

* over fingrene

* dydsmønster

* problemfri

* uproblematisk

* ~ kunne vente sig ngt.

* en brat opvågning

* vænnet til ngt. fra en tidlig alder

* streng * disciplin

462 Happily married to the light of his `life ,	* sit livs lys		
and having added much to his experience ,	* blive (mange) erfaringer rigere		
the King recalls his sexual awakening innocently starting	* opvågnen		* uskyldigt
with heavy `petting .	* gryende bevidsthed		
	* heftigt kæleri		
Two princes and two princesses see the light (of day) .	* se dagens lys		
Every time there's great rejoicing at / over the happy news.	* komme til verden		
	* (stor) glæde over ngt.		
It's a time of rejoicing(s) .	* (tid) fuld af glæde		
	* glædesfyldt (tid)		
Each time the parents have cause to rejoice ,	* glæde sig		
they rejoice at an expected increace in the family ,	* glædes ved /	* forøgelse	* i familien
10 rejoice over the addition to the family ,	* fryde sig over >	~ familieførøgelse	
	* =		
and rejoice in the sound of quick light footsteps all around.	* =	* let	* fodtrin
	* ... at -		
They rejoice that all their children thrive.	* holde sig fra ngt.		* spillopper
Even if their children don't always keep out of mischief ,			* gavtyvestreger
the parents rejoice to see them develop and shape well .	* <<	* udvikle sig	* arte sig godt
Everytime the King returns after some time of absence	* fravær >		
from home , the children rush to greet him arms outstretched .	* ~ hjemmefra	* fare afsted for at -	* ~ med udstrakte
			arme
' Come quick(ly) ! Come on ! Quick ! ' they rap out .	* hurtigt	* =	* udslynge
			udstøde
Each of them want to get to him quickest	* hurtigt		
and hurl themselves into his arms .	* kaste sig >		* i ngs. arme
20 ' Watch how you hold those scissors (pl.) – you could	* holde øje med / passe på hvordan -		* saks
do yourself a `mischief , ' the King warns one of them.	* gøre en ulykke på sig selv		
	* komme til skade		
When the lively little princes and princesses are up to	* livlig		* være ude på >
mischief , a mischievous gleam / glint lights () up their eyes .	* rask		
	* spillopper * skælmsk * glimt * få ngs. øjne til at lyse op		
The eyes of the imp are bright with mischief	* øjnene >	* djævlunge	* lyse af spillopper
		~ spilpmager	
when he grabs a handful of his sisters hair and jerks at it.	* tage fat i ngt.		* rykke i ngt.
Having played tricks (on someone) and got into mischief ,	* lave narrestreger		* rode sig ind i ...
the mischievous little children come thundering through	* skælmsk		* tordne / fare + adv.
the rooms with a mischievous / impish grin .	* gavtyveagtig		* smil
Without wanting to admit it, the sleepy little `mischiefs	* søvnig		* djævel, gavtyv
30 can't help yawning sleepily .	* gabe		* spilpmager
			* søvnigt
' It's late – go to bed ' the parents urge (the sleepyheads).	* søvnigpeter		* formane (ng.)
Finally the parents orders, ' Go to sleep – it's bedtime –	* gå i seng		
so good night – sleep tight .'	* go' nat og sov godt		
They sometimes sleep `in .	* sove længe		
They sleep `late on Sundays and holidays.	* =		
The family is waiting to see the Queen's parents.	* vente på at -		
Sometimes they have a long wait – a long wait for them.	* lang	* venten	* ... på ng.
The King won't load his wife down with more pregnances .	* belaste ng. med ngt.		* graviditet
So he won't burden his wife or himself with more children.	* bebyrde / belaste / belemre ng. med ngt.		

THE KING AND POLITICS

463 The King's study is a light and spacious room.	* arbejdsværelse	* lyst	* rummeligt
When it's light , he can work in the natural light of day .	* det er lyst om dagen	* naturligt	* dagslys
In (the) winter, it gets dark early / about 5 o'clock.	* det bliver mørkt		
When it's dark outside as in the (dark) winter('s) days /	* mørkt	* udenfor	* i vinterdagene (i de mørke vinterdage)
/ on (dark) winter('s) days / on a (dark) winter('s) day ,	* på (mørke) ...dage		* på en (mørk) ...dag
he works by artificial light: by candlelight and lamplight .	* i kunstigt lys	* i lyset fra levende lys	* lampelys
Heavily E/A heavy into politics, the King becomes	* stærkt inde i ng.		
heavily involved in politics in his own way.	* stærkt		* involveret i (politik)
He's an avid / a keen collector of books.	* ivrig		* samler af ng.
10 Although the King is a man of comprehensive knowledge ,	* omfattende, alsidig >		* viden
he finds some books quite heavy .	* tung vanskelig at forstå		
Some heavyweight writers and subjects are heavy going .	* sværvægts-	* ~ svær at have med at gøre / forstå	
One day the King's eyes had alighted (up)on a book.	* falde over (lande på) ng.		
He had alighted (up)on an interesting book as he had	* ~ finde ng. tilfældigt		
lighted / lit on a book giving a comprehensive description	* =	* omfattende, alsidig >	* beskrivelse
of liberalism in the light of the Crown and royal power .	* i lyset af / relation til ng.	* ~ kongemagten	* kongemagt
Full of wit and wisdom, it's a book setting () `forth / `out	* vid	* fremstille ng. (i tale / på skrift)	
a thorough and comprehensive study into	* grundig >	* omfattende >	* studie / undersøgelse af ng.
a comprehensive range of socioeconomic relations.	* omfattende >	* mængde	* socioøkonomisk
20 The King can relate to books like that.	* forstå sig på ng.		
As one of the leading lights in the philosophical world ,	* førerskikkelse indenfor >	* (filosofisk) verden	
the author is `light years ahead of conventual wisdom	* lysår foran	* ~ den gængse mening / opfattelse	
and the prevailing opinion.	* herskende (mening)		
Lightyears ahead, he is an intellectual heavyweight ,	* lysår foran		* sværvægter
light years ahead of most of the nobility.	* ... ng.		
(a ligh year is the distance the light travels in one year.)	* lysår ca. 10. 000. 000. 000. 000 km		
The book shows the society in a different light .	* vise ng. >	* i et anderledes lys	
It shows that something is out of joint in the society.	* ~ ikke som det skal være		
The time is out of joint .	* tiden er af lave		
30 The author is a leading light in social debate,	* ~ ledestjerne i ng.		
and a leading light of social debaters .	* ... blant ng.		* debattør
His opinions carry (a lot of) weight with the King.	* ~ øve (stor) indflydelse på ng		
The author is lightyears better than most leading ,	* lysår bedre end ng.		* ledende
`trendsetting and pacesetting social debaters,	* toneangivende		* =
and his book lightyears better than most others.	* <<		
Deploying all his talent, he deploys powerful arguments.	* anvende / udnytte (talent)	* ... stærkt (argument)	
Deployment of talent and argumentation is his hallmark .	* -lse	* argumentation	* adelsmærke
Some of his writing has not yet seen the `light (of day) .	* se dagens lys, ~ blive offentliggjort		

464 The book quickens the King's interest in social science .	* forstærke * interesse (for ngt.) * samfundsvidenskab / øge >
The Queen's interest quickens too, as she's told about it.	* interesse > forstærkes / øges
The King reads fast and learns quickly .	* hurtigt * =
He is a fast and avid reader and a fast / quick learner .	* hurtig * ivrig * læser * = * elev ~ hurtig til at lære
Soaking up knowledge and language, he is quick to learn .	* suge (viden etc.) til sig * hurtig til at - ~ (nemt) tilegne sig ...
He is quick on the uptake even if the text is quite laboured	* hurtig til at kapere / opfatte * omstændelig
so he is able to understand quickly what the author	* hurtigt
has got to say , and what is on his mind .	* have at sige * hvad ng. har på sinde
He is, in fact, very witty and very quick .	* fuld af vid og humor * kvik
10 Taking an avid interest in economic and social science,	* fatte > * ivrig * interesse for ngt.
he amazes everybody with his agile mind / brain :	* kvik > * opfattelsesevne / hjerne
his quickness and eagerness to learn .	* hurtighed (til) > * iver (efter) > * at -
His American connections call him a quick study .	* bekendte * ~ lærenem elev
Besides his reputaion as a quick worker ,	* ~ hurtigtarbejdende person
the King is known to be quick-witted and entertaining.	* ~ hurtig i opfattelsen, kvik, opvakt, snarrådig
He is known for his wittiness , his witty remarks,	* vittig kløgtighed * kvik (bemærkning)
and the quickness of his wit .	* hurtighed i * vid, vittig kløgt ~ opvakt- / snarrådighed
For a time the book engrosses all the King's attention .	* optage > * opmærksomhed
Sitting in his armchair , he once in a while folds his arms	* armstol * ~ lægge armene over kors
20 and leans back deep in thought .	* læne sig tilbage * ~ fordybet i tanker (tankevirksomhed)
Leaning back in his chair, alternately crossing his arms	* =
and resting his arms on the arms of the chair ,	* hvile armen(e) * stolearmen(e)
he thinks () over the matters, deeply engrossed .	* tænke over / overveje * helt opslugt gennemtænke ngt.
Thinking () out and formulating plan, the King spends	* udtænke / gennemtænke > * formulere (plan)
many of his waking hours buried and engrossed in the book.	* begravet / fordybet i ngt. * opslugt af / for dybet i ngt.
Although the book describes an engrossing problem,	* opmærksomhedskrævende
the King takes care not to let it engross him totally.	* opsluge / -tage ng.
One time when he is engrossed with reading,	* fuldt beskæftiget med ngt.
30 and totally absorbed in the book, the Queen barges in .	* opslugt af / fordybet i ngt. * brase ind
Her coming barging into the study makes the King jump .	* ... i ngt. * få > * ~ ng. til at fare op med et spjæt / det til at give et sæt i ng.
Intent (up)on his studies, lost in thought , the King starts	* optaget af ngt. * fordybet i tanker * ~ fare op med et sæt
(from his chair) as he twist in his chair to see who it is.	* fra ngt. * vride sig om
' Sorry, I didn't mean to startle you,' the Queen says	* forskrække ng.
apologetically,' but I have a startling question , just a quickie .'	* forbløffende / * spørgsmål * et hurtigt et overraskende
Perching on the arm of his chair , and having been	* sætte sig / * stolearm sidde og balancere på ngt.
engrossed in conversation with her husband, she concludes	* fordybet i samtale med ng.
wittily , ' Don't deny you were startled by my question.'	* kvikt og muntert * overrasket / forbløffet over ngt.
The Queen sticks to a bit of light reading , (a) narrative	* let / underholdnings- litteratur * fortælling `narê tiv
laced with a great deal of clever and amusing asides .	* spækket med ngt. * munter * sidebemærkning

465 The Queen reads folk tales to her children,	* læse >	* folke-	* fortælling	* for ng.
and reads them fairy tales about good and wicked fairies.	* læse ng. >	* alfe, fe	* fortælling	* gode / onde (<...er)
Embracing new liberal ideas, the King reads his book	* favne (ide)			* læse / ... i ng.
every night by the light of the bedside lamp .	* i lyset fra ng.			* sengelampe
The book is intelligible ; it's readily intelligible to the King.	* forståelig		* umiddelbart	* ... for
The novelist appears in the book as a first-person narrator .	* romanforfatter			* fortæller
He narrates / relates his adventures around the world.	* fortælle / berette >		* ~ fantastiske oplevelser	
The novel is a startling narration and a gripping narrative of	* fortælling			* =
his journey, each plot about a very different imaginary region.	beretning * handlingsforløb om ng.			* opdigtet
10 So in terms of plot (U), it is narrative fiction , and as a wit	* handling	* fortællende	* fiktion	* kvik og vittig >
and raconteur , the author is a master of narration / narrative .	* fortæller		opspind	person / -t hoved * fortællekunst
Each plot is a series of very surprising events.	* handlingsforløb			* serie
Through a number of allegories , the book traces the history	* allegori			* efterspore ng.
of philosophy and its relationship to ethics and politics from	symbolsk fremstilling * forhold til ng.			* fra ng. >
ancient Greece to the present day .	* til nutiden / vore dage			
The King often reads himself to sleep .	* læse sig >			* i søvn
Reading sometimes sends him to sleep as it may be	* få ng. til at falde i søvn			
hard to stay awake during boring passages.	* holde sig vågen			
Having read through the book, he is familiar with	* gennemlæse ng.			
20 the comprehensive views, he read in the book.	* omfattende / alsidig (betragtning)			* læse i ng.
The ideas of the Enlightenment underlie the book.	* (ideer fra) oplysningen		* ligge til grund for (bog)	
In the form of allegory , the ideas and views come to light .	~ oplysningstiden * i form af >	* allegori		* se dagens lys
The book has a startling effect on the King.	* forbløffende			
The King is startled by the conclusions of the book.	* overrasket / forbløffet / foruroliget / opskræmt over ng.			
He is startled to read such surprising analysis (U) :	* ... at -			* analyse
such frightening analyses (pl.) of today's society, and	* =			
the prospects in the short , the medium , and the long term .	* perspektiv	* ~ på kort >	* mellem-	* langt >
The book reveals startling contrasts between the classes.	udsig * overraskende, forbløffende		langt >	* sigt
It's been a startling discovery that such contrasts prevail .	foruroligende, skræmmende * forkrækkende	* opdagelse at -		* kontrast
30 They may one day set the world alight / on fire .	foruroligende, skræmmende * sætte verden i brand, ~ vække opsig			* ng. er frem-
It is startling to read that the society is on the brink of	~ gøre sin indflydelse vældigt gældende * ... at -			herskende
social upheaval which may lead to a major political upheaval .	* omvæltning		* større	* ...
The book makes the King build up a stock of arguments	* lager (-behodning) af (argumenter)			
as it startles him to acknowledge that the society may be	* forurolige / forkrække /			* erkende at -
on the brink / verge of a popular uprising or even revolution.	skræmme ng. at - * på randen / kanten af >			* folkelig opstand
Awaking emotions, involment in philosophy can awaken	* vække følelser			* vække >
an interest that will last a lifetime .	* interesse		* vare >	* ~ hele livet
Their respect of human rights links the author and the King.	* sammenkæde ng. og ng.			
It makes a connection between the two.	* skabe >			* en forbindelse mellem ng.

466 It was during a period of social crises that his political

awakening took place in **earnest**, and **quicken**ed.

He has **puzzled over** / **about** the problem for ages

before **the light suddenly** `dawned (**on** him).

The King **reconsiders** his ideas and political **involvement**
ri-kën'sidéz

in **the light of** (E/A) **in light of** the book.

Although things may look different **in the cold light of day**,

the King finally **sees the** `light.

The **awakening of** an interest in philosophy,

10 and the **awakening of** social **consciousness** make

the King change his **attitude to(wards)** people and politics.

Throwing `light on the causes of poverty,

the book **sheds** new **light on** the causes of **unrest**.
ûn`rest

It never **clouds the picture** with unimportant details.

Never **clouding the issue** with unnecessary **asides**.

the book **arms / equips** the King **with a mass of** information.

In order to **arm / equip himself for a stormy** debate,

the King **arms / equips** himself (**with** facts and information)

to argue his **case** in any possible argument.

20 Some people **join** (**with**) the King **to** work for reform

and **join** (**with**) him **in** trying to **introduce** reforms.

Eager to **join** anyone **for a lively** and **fruitful** debate,

the King is ready to **join** adherents as well as opponents.

Keen in **joining** `in with a group of debators,

the King is keen to **join** `in with their debate.

For a while he listens **intently** but doesn't **join in**.

Having eventually **joined** `in a / some **discourse on** politics,
`diskê-s

the King **joins in discoursing** (up)on issues of politics.

dis`kê-sing
issues that often **engender** controversy and strong feelings.

30 **Armed / equipped with** relevant facts and figures,

and a **biting wit**, the King is well **armed / equipped**

for a debate, and **to prove** his opponents (to be) **wrong**.

The King tries to **convince** his opponents (**that**)

it's a **dark country** in which the social system, the justice

and tax system are **loaded in favour of** the upper classes

and their position in the society.

The system is **loaded against** the lower classes.

As **the dice are loaded against** the poor,

the **odds are loaded against** social **ascent** / a social **climb**.

*

* vækkelse

* for alvor

* tage fart

opvågningen

* bryde sin hjerne med ngt.

* lyset >

* ~ går op for ng.

* genoverveje ngt.

* involvering
indblanding

* i lyset af (bog)

* i dagens klare lys

* ~ komme til sandheds erkendelse
lade sig overbevise

* vækkelse af (interesse)

* ... >

* bevidsthed

* holdning til / indstilling overfor ng&t.

* kaste >

* lys over ngt.

* ... (nyt) ...

* (samfundsmæssig) uro

* ~ forplumre >

* billedet

* = * hovedsagen med >

* sidebemærkning

* forsyne /
udstyre ng. med >

* ~ en masse (information)
massevis af (...)

* ~ væbne sig til >

* stormfuld (debat)

* forsyne sig (med fakta etc.)

* ~ med henblik på at - * argumentere for > * sin sag

* slutte sig sammen med ng. for at -

* =

* indføre / gennemføre (reformer)

* være sammen
med ng.

* ~ med
henblik på >

* livlig * frugtbar
(debat)

* mødes med ng.

* slutte sig til ng.

* slutte sig til (debat)

* optaget

* blande sig

* taget del i >

* foredrag, samtale

* tage del i at - >

debat, diskussion

* skabe, fremkalde, vække (kontrovers / følelse)

* væbnet / forsynet med ngt.

* ~ skarpt

* vid

* væbnet / klædt på >

* til ngt. / at -

* bevise ng. (at være)

* ~ på vildspor

~ bevise at ng. tager fejl

* overbevise ng. at -

* formørket

* land

* ~ være indrettet >

* til fordel for ng.

*

* ... >

* ulempe for ng.

* terningerne

* belastet, ~ forfalsket imod ng.

~ skæbnen falder ud til ugunst for ng.

* =

* opstigning

467 The book is inspired the **French Revolution** of 1789,
and by the preceding **American Revolution** (1775 – 1783)
(the successful **revolt** of the American colonies
ri' vœult
by which they won their independence from Great Britain).

The book describes the **relationship between**
class society and poverty-related problems.

It **relates that class barrier** and **unequal** rights have
become an **impediment to** economic growth.

It **relates who** profits from **class distinction**, **relates when**,
10 where, and **how class distinctions** developed, and
which means are used to maintain a **class-divided** society.

It **relates** poverty and **distress** (**anguish, agony**,
adversity, hardship(s) and **tribulation**). Look a page 500 !
êd' vê--sêti

It **relates** poverty **to** physical and mental suffering.

Poverty and a feeling of great worry **are** closely **related**.

The book then **relates a link between inequality**
and social **unrest**.

It maintains the **linkage between** social **inequalities**
and political unrest and other **related** issues.

20 It **links** social **imbalance and popular unrest**.

It **links** social imbalance(s) **with** civil unrest.

It **links** civil unrest **to** social **disparity**.

Research establishes that the poverty of the lower classes
is **linked to** social oppression, and **inextricably linked with**
the social exploitation **orchestrated by** the upper classes.

The lower classes are upset, and the King can **relate to** that.

The book **relates to** the **cloud of revolution**.

Political unrest **and disparity between** the rich and the poor
are closely, strongly, and **directly linked**.

30 The book **establishes evidence for** strong **causal links**
between psychological, social and political factors.

Connecting popular unrest **and** mental suffering,
the book **establishes an inextricable connection between**
relative poverty **and** an **immanent** urge to **rebel / revolt**.

Connecting social unrest **to** the **miseries of** poverty,
the book **connects** financial, physical, and emotional **distress**
among the poor **with** political unrest.

New policies ought to be **formulated**,
and laws **ought to** be passed to **counter** (<act) poverty.

* Den Franske Revolution

* ~ Den Amerikanske Frihedskrig

* oprør

*

* forbindelse mellem ngt.

* klassesamfund

* relateret

* berette / * klasseskel * ulige (rettigheder)
fortælle at -
* hæmsko for ngt.

* berette / fortælle om hvxx - * klasse- * skelnen * =

* = * klasse- * forskelligheder
skel

* = * klasseskelt

* sammenholde * kval * kval, pine * & dødskamp
ngt. og ngt. nød, sorg smerte

* modgang * besværlighed, modgang * modgang
ulykke afsagn, (strabadser) prøvelse

* sætte ngt. i forbindelse med ngt.

* (fattigdom og bekymring) er (tæt) forbundet

* berette / * forbindelse * ulighed
fortælle om ngt. mellem ngt. og ngt.
* (social) uro

* forbindelse mellem > * uligheder

* beslægtet

* sammenkæde > * ubalance * og * folkelig * uro

* kæde ngt. sammen med ngt

* knytte ngt. til ngt. * ulighed
forskelt

* forskning * fastslå at - (fattigdom)

* knyttet til * uløseligt * forbundet med >
(undertrykkelse)

* (udnyttelse) * minutløst iværksat af ng.

* forholde sig til det

* forholde sig til ngt. * fare / * & omvæltning
trussel om ngt.

* (uro) og * forskel / ulighed mellem ng.

* er > * tæt * stærkt * direkte * forbundet

* tilvejebringe / * tydelig tegn * årsags- * forbindelse >
opstille ngt. på ngt. betinget
* mellem ngt.

* forbinde ngt. og ngt.

* << * uløselig * forbindelse mellem >

* relativ * iboende, ~ naturlig * gøre oprør
forholdsvis

* knytte ngt. til > * kvaler, ~ megen elendighed

* ... ngt. > * nød, elendighed, lidelse

* sammen med ngt.

* formuleret

* burde * imødegå / afværge ngt.

468 Poverty and class struggle are **closely connected**.

The author **demonstrates** the **causal connection**
between class barriers and **rebellions / revolts / uprisings**.

It's quite obvious to **make the connection**.

While the king **makes** the **connection between** reform
and economic development, the nobility **make no or little**
connection between the two.

The nobility are too **hidebound** to **see the connection**.

The **narrow-minded** nobels refuse to realize **there is a link**.
... E/A ...

10 They deny that there is a **link between** the two facts.

They **deny** a **close** and **strong connection**.

The nobility **refuse to** see the **cloud on the horizon**.

The nobility refuse to see the **cloud of** rebellion.

While the nobility **cheerfully** enjoy their `privileges,
and **turn a blind `eye to the danger signals**,
the **storm clouds** of revolution are **gathering**.

The **power base** of the nobility is **horizontally** spread
by **social relations**: first of all **personal** and **family relations**.

By means of arranged marriages, the noble families have

20 become **intermarried** in all directions.

So **related by marriage** in a **criss(-)cross (pattern)**,
all the members are somehow **close** or **distant relatives**.

Either as **blood relations** or **relations by marriage** they are
often both **close** and **distant relations** in various ways.

So, often both **closely** and **distantly related**,
all the members of the noble families are somehow

blood relatives or **relatives by marriage**.

Vertically the power of the nobility is based on a strict
master-servant relationship.

30 **Bringing** new fact to light, the book **goes on the attack**.

It's a **scathing attack on** the nobility and its **policies**.

It strongly **attacks** the idea of a class-divided society.

The book **shows** the problems in a **new** and **different light**.

The nobility has **come under fierce attack** (U).

It's **under sustained attack** for its **hideboundness**.

The country, and so the law are in **urgent need of** reform.

Attacking the nobility for their **narrow-mindedness**,
and **attacking** them for **standing in the way of `progress**,
the book provokes (an) **outcry** / (an) **uproar** among the nobility.

* tæt forbundet

* påvise / beviser > * årsagsbetinget * forbindelse >

* mellem ngt. og ngt.

* skabe sammenhængen, indse forbindelsen

* ... mellem ngt.

* ikke / i ringe grad { skabe / indse >

* sammenhængen / forbindelsen mellem ngt.

* forbenet * indse ngt. * =

* snæversynet * ... forbindelse

* ... mellem ngt.

* be- / fornægte ngt. * tæt * stærk * forbindelse
sammenhæng

* afvise at - * den truende sky i horisonten

* ~ forvarsel / fare / trussel om ngt.

* munter / ubekymret

* vende det blinde øje til ngt. * faresignal

* ~ uvejrsskyerne trækker sammen til (revolution)

* magt- * base * horisontalt (udbredt)

* & ... tilknytningsforhold * ... forbindelse

*

* indgiftet

* beslægtet ved giftermål * på kryds og tværs

* nær / fjern * familiemedlem
slægtning

* blodsbeslægtet person * ... gennem giftermål
kødelig slægtning

* tæt / fjern * familiemedlem
slægtning

* tæt / fjernt beslægtet

*

* blodbeslægtet person * beslægtet gennem giftermål

* vertikalt

* herre-tjener * forhold

* bringe (fakta) > * frem i lyset * ~ gå til angreb

* svidende * angreb på ng. * fremfærdsprincipper
bidende, skarp

* angribe / kritisere (ide)

* vise ngt. > * i et nyt og anderledes lys

* komme under / * hårdt * angreb
blive udsat for > skarp ~ kritik

* være ... * vedvarende * ... for > * forstokket- /
snæversynethed

* ~ have > * presserende * behov for (reform)

* ... ng. for ngt. * snæversynethed

* ... for at - * stå i vejen for > * fremskridt

* ramaskrig, opstandelse / - = -

469 The final chapter relates to the urgent need for reforms.	* kapitel	* relatere / forholde sig til >	* presserene	* behov for ngt.
The benevolent King is heavily influenced by the book.		* venlig og gavmild		* kraftigt påvirket af ngt.
Influencing his outlook on life, it influences his decisions.		* influere på / påvirke		ngt.
Casting new light on the causes of social misery , the book	* kaste >	* (nyt) lys på ngt.	* samfunds- mæssig	* armod
awakens the King to the dangers of social imbalance(s) .		* vække ng. til (fig. trans.)		* ubalance (-r)
Ready for and eager for reform and intent on democracy,	* parat til ngt.	* ivrig efter / opsat på ngt		* opsat på ngt.
the broad-minded King receives a call to arms .	* ~ åbensindet	* modtage > ~ blive kaldt under fanerne		* et kald til våben
Expounding the book's views on society (to the nobility),	* fremstille / udlægge / forklare ngt. (for ng.)			
the King expounds on his new policies.	* fortælle / forklare om ngt.			
10 Being out of step with developments / the trend	* ude af trit med (udviklingen)			
is a problem any leader can't afford to approach / take lightly .	* tillade sig at -	* gribe (problem) / tage let på < ligeegyldigt / skodesløst an		
It's not a problem he can afford to treat lightly .	* behandle ngt. skodesløst / med ligeegyldighed			
The kings have always been engaged in ongoing battles	* blandet ind i / optaget af ngt.	* igangværende		* kamp >
with oppositional circles within the nobility and the clergy	* med >	* oppositionelle		* kredse
over power, and for power.	* ~ vedrørende ngt.			* for ngt.
Awaking to his vocation , the King wants reforms.	* vågne op til (fig. intrans.)			* kald
Sleeping () away neither the hours nor his cares ,	* sove tiden bort	* sove fra >		* bekymringer sorger
he wants to liberalize the laws and the political system.	*			
The underprivileged classes have long fought	* uprilegeret			* kæmpe >
20 an uphill battle against / with social discrimination.	* en kamp op ad bakke mod ngt.			
The underprivileged classes have long fought for equality	*			
but have so far fought a losing battle .	* indtil nu / videre	* kæmpe >		* en forgæves kamp
They have until / (till) / up to now lost the battle .	* =			* tabe kampen
Some people regard the King's reforms as up in the clouds .	* ~ højtflyvende			
Although he is accused of having his head in the `clouds ,	* ~ have tankerne andetsteds ikke have jordforbindelse			
the king is prepared to join battle .	* ~ gå i kamp			
He is ready to join battle with his enemies – with those	* ... mod ng.			* fjende
of the nobility who stick to their `antiquated and set views .	* stå fast på >	* antikverede	* ~ fast- gammeldags	* synspunkter holdninger
Poverty and ignorance are the enemies of `progress.	* uvidenhed	* fjende af >		* fremskridt & fremskridtets fjende
30 Feeling an urge to engage in the battle for democracy,	* kamp for ngt.			
the King engages in the battle with the nobility –	* ... med / mod ng,			
a battle with / against social discrimination and inequality	* ... mod (forskelsbehandling)			
So eager to , keen to and determined to battle with /	* ivrig efter / opsat på at -	* =	* fast besluttet på at -	* kæmpe mod /
against social discrimination and inequalities, the King is	* mod ngt.			
intent on and bent on battling for freedom and democracy,	* opsat på >	* = >		* at kæmpe for ngt.
and keen on and set on battling with the nobility.	* fast besluttet på	* =		* at kæmpe ~ mod ng.
Introducing democracy is never a simple proposition .	* & nem			* forehavende, opgave
It's tough work so the King and his kindred spirits	* hårdt arbejde	* beslægtede		* ånder ~ åndsfrænder / -fæller
have to join together to win the battle .	* slutte sig sammen ~ gøre fælles sag	* vinde >		* kampen

470 The King wants to **democratize** the government
by **lessening** the **power of** the aristocracy,
and **follow** / **pursue** a **policy** **arm in arm** with the commons.

As both advocates and opponents of liberal reforms

stand **fast** / **firm**, the **battle lines** are **drawn**.

So the King **takes up** **arms** **against** the aristocracy.

Taking up arms against social and legal **injustice**,
he **takes up arms against** an **unjust electoral system**
loaded in favour of the upper classes.

10 The King's **embrace of** democracy makes him want to
introduce the right for all citizens to form political parties.

A peaceful and fair government of the country
needs parties that ordinary people can **relate to**.

Directly related to income, education **levels** among
the population are **closely** and **strongly related to** class.

As the King **takes up arms for** the lower classes,
he **takes up arms for** a free **education system** for
ordinary people.

He wants to introduce **the secrecy of the ballot**,

20 the secrecy of mails etc.

A ballot may have a **heavy** or **light vote**.

The lower classes **carry** a **heavy burden** of **taxation**.

In order to promote production and trade the king advocates
measures to **lighten** the **tax burden on** people who have
their **income from employment**, or from **small businesses**.

Viewing the King's **policies** in a **favourable** / **good** **light**,
his advocates **present** his reforms **in a positive light**.

The King's opponents are **thunderstruck** as they not at all
see the **far-reaching** reforms **in that light**.

30 As they don't **look on** them **in that light**,
they **criticize** the reforms **heavily**.

The nobility refuse to **see** the reforms **in a different light**.

So they **intend** to **put** the reforms **in a false light**
as well as they **intend** putting the King **in a bad light**.

As they **view** his policies **in an unfavourable light**,
the nobility threatens to **counter with** lawsuits,
and **present** the reforms **in a negative light**.

Monarchy and liberalism seem **strange** **bedfellows**.

A King and a liberalist seem **unlikely bedfellows**.

* demokratisere ngt.
* mindske > * ngs. magt
* følge / føre en politik * ~ i skøn forening med ng.
*
* stå fast * ~ fronterne * er trukket op
* drage i felten /
føre krig imod ng.
* - - > * uretfærdighed
* - - > * uretfærdigt * valg- * system
* vægtet til fordel for ng.
* omfavelse af (demokrati)
*
*
* forholde sig til ngt.
* direkte * knyttet til ngt. * (uddannelses-) niveau
* tæt * * stærkt * - - -
* ~ drage i felten for ng.
* = * uddannelses- * system, & væsen
* almindelige mennesker
* hemmelighed ved > * afstemning
& hemmelig ...
* ~ brevhemmelighed
* overvældende * ringe valgdeltagelse
* bære > * tung * byrde * beskatning
~ skattebyrde
*
* lette > * skattebyrde > * ~ for ng.
* indkomst fra > * ansættelse * små- * virksomhed
~ lønmødtagerindkomst
* se > * politiske tiltag * i et gunstigt lys
* fore- / fremlægge ngt. i et positivt / fordelagtigt ...
* overrasket og chokeret
* se > * vidtrækkende (reformer) * i det lys
* =
* kritisere ngt. * voldsomt
* se ngt. > * i et andet / anderledes lys
* have til hensigt / * fremstille ngt. i et falsk lys
være opsat på at -
* = * stille ng. > * i et dårligt lys
* se ngt. > * i et dårligt lys
* slå igen med (retssag)
* fremstille ngt. * i et negativt / ufordelagtigt
* mærkelige * sengekammerater
* usandsynlige *

471 The power, social position, and welth of the nobility are inextricably linked with their privileges.	*
Lots of nobles are connected / related often by marriage	* forbundet med / knyttet til (privilegier)
so a noble may have relations / relatives in many places.	* ~ være i familie * gennem ægteskab
Strong family ties link the nobility together .	* familiemedlem, slægtning
Social customs provide a vital link between generations.	* bånd * knytte ng. sammen
Even if a nobleman lives in his mansion or manor (house)	* skikke * udgøre > * livsvigtig * forbindelsesled
on his manor out in the country with his close family,	* afgørende mellem ng.
he usually has connections living in the city.	*
10 The nobility's confidence is sky-high ,	* fjernere slægtninge
and they do what they can to keep up appearances .	* skyhøj
Even if adultery is a common occurrence ,	* bevare facaden
divorce is a rare occurrence .	* (ægteskablig) * begivenhed, forekomst, hændelse
Important noblemen profit from their network of	* utroskab (~ almindeligt forekommende)
family and business connections in influential circles .	* sjælden ...
A noble may have connections in high places .	*
If a noble has good connections , he is well connected .	* ...forbindelser * indflydelsesrige * kredse
A business connection / contac may be a close friend.	* have > * forbindelser * på højt niveau
So as the members of the nobility have a lot of rich	* ... > * gode * = * ~ have gode ...
20 and important friends and relatives , the King	* forbindelse
is confronted by a formidable and difficult task .	*
Some mischievous noblemen are up to mischief	* familiemedlem, slægtning
although they are quick to deny any involvement in mischief .	* ~ stillet overfor > * formidabel * opgave
By spreading mischievous lies, gossip and rumours,	* ondsindet * være ude på > * overordentlig stor * ballade
the mischief-making noblemen do all they can to do mischief .	* hurtig til at - * = urostiftelse
Their mischievous obstruction, mischievous intrigues ,	* ondsindet, skadelig
and malicious gossip cause a lot of political mischief .	* skadevoldende * skabe > * ballade / fortræd / uro
Some spiteful and malicious mischief-makers try to	* urostiftende gøre / volde > * skade
make mischief between the queen and her mother in law.	* ondsindet * obstruktion * = * intrige
30 Many noblemen twist facts connected with the issue .	* skadelig hindring * rænkespil
' You may think people are poor, but it's all relative , isn't it ? '	* onskabsfuld * ballade
they ask rhetorically with the intention of denying facts	* hadsk uro
relative to the issue.	* onskabs- / hadefuld * = * ballade- / uromager
Intent (up)on a discussion about a problem, the King	* skabe splid mellem ng.
is sometimes so intent (up)on discussing the problem with	* fordreje > * fakta * forbundet med > * sagen
someone that he doesn't notice the time.	* ' alt er relativt
He doesn't let minor details obscure the main issue .	* retorisk * med den intention /
Saying and doing extraordinary things, the King is	* knyttet til (sagen) i den hensigt at -
notorious within the nobility for his extraordinary opinions.	* optaget af ngt. * diskussion om ngt.
	* ... af at - * diskutere med ng.
	*
	* skygge for > * hovedsagen
	* usædvanlige, overraskende, mærkelige
	* =

472 When a mischief has been done,

it may be too late to **make it up / make up for it**.

Taking () on an intimate clique of mischief-makers,

a **clannish** band of **haughty** and dangerous opponents

obsessed with **mischief-making**, the King faces /

is **up against** a **daunting** task of formidable **obstacles**.

Fastening on(to) // latching onto / on to his idol,

the King, **nothing`daunted**, **latches on**; he **fastens on(to) //**

latches onto / on to the ideas of his great **example**.

10 As self-sufficiency, arrogance, **haughtiness**,

and pride **cloud** the **outlook** and **vision** of most aristocrats,

the **short-sighted** nobility **fastens on(to)** **hangover** ideals

from **antiquated** role models, and their **outdated** views.

The book is **intended as** a source of inspiration.

Intended to be an **eye-opener**, the book is **intended to**
prepare the ground for a more **righteous** society.

Intended for awareness and **consciousness raising**,

the book is **intended for open-minded** people.

Fortunately, some leading lights of the intellectual world

20 have the wit to see the need for social **righteousness**.

Some **far-seeing intellectuals** and **kindred spirits**

connected with the business and academic world,

welcome the King's ideas and plans **with open arms**.

Keen on taking advice from these **far-sighted pioneers**,

the King **arrange to make contact with** these **kindred souls**.

It's surely not **beyond the wit of man** to find a **solution**.

It should **not be beyond the wit of man** to **resolve**

the **issue** and the **dispute** in order to **resolve** the **conflicts**,

and the **crises** and **problems** the conflicts have caused.

30 Eager to pit his wits against leading lights,

the King appreciates a **battle of wits with** such opponents.

A fierce **battle of wits between disagreeing** opponents

often turns into a **battle of wills**.

The King's face **takes on** a **set expression** as he will need

all his **wits to fight** a **battle (with an opponent) (for reform)**,

fight his opponent, and **win** the **battle**.

The **comprehensive** King is **prepared to fight** every time

his **mischievous** and **malevolent** opponents **launch / mount /**
mê`levêlênt

make an attack on his **radical** and **comprehensive policy**.

* ~ når skaden er sket

* gøre det godt igen

* ~ oppe imod ng. * sammenspist indforstået * klike * ballademager

* sammenspist indforstået * hoven overlegen

* besat af > * ballade- / uromageri

* oppe imod * skræmmende overvældende (opgave) * forhindringer

* holde fast ved ng. * - = - * & forbillede

* ~ uforfærdet * holde fast * - - - ved >

* - - - ved ng. * forbillede

* selvtilstrækkelighed * arrogance, hovenhed overlegenhed

* forplumre / sløre > * udsyn * vision, udsyn

* kortsynet * hage sig fast ved > * levn af ng. >

* fra ng&t. * forældet * =

* påtænkt / ment som ng.

* påtænkt at være ng. * øjenåbner * ... at gøre ng.

* gøde jorden for ng. * moralsk retfærdigt

* tiltænkt for ng. * bevidstgørelse * =

* ... for ng. * åbensindet

*

* være klog / indse ng. * retfærdighed

* fornuftig nok til at - fremsynet * intellektuel * ~ åndsfrænde vidtskuende / -fælle

* knyttet til ng.

* byde ng. velkommen * med åbne arme

* ivrig efter / fremsynet * & foregangsmand opsat på at -

* sørge for at - * ~ skabe kontakt til > * åndsfrænde / -fælle

* (ikke) hinsides mennesket forstand * løsning

* = * bilægge / løse >

* sag * strid * ... > * konflikt

* krise * problem

* ~ sætte sin viden på prøve overfor ng.

* kamp på viden med ng.

* ... mellem ng. * (værende) uenige

* ... viljestyrke

* (ansigt) ~ antage et særligt udtryk

* forstand * kæmpe > * kamp (med ng.) (for ng.) kløgt, vid

* bekæmpe ng. * vinde > * kampen

* alsidigt begavet / vidende * forberedt på at - * kæmpe & være kampberedt

* ondsindet * iværksætte >

* foretage > * angreb * gennem- * omfattende * politisk på ng. gribende storstilet vision

473 The **snobbish / stuck-up** nobility are **scared** ^{ˈwɪtləs} **witless** **of** (the thought of) losing their privileges.

* snobbet, hoven * = * skræmt > * fra vid og sans arrogant
* over (at -) ngt.

Scared / frighten / terrified (**out of** their wits)

* skræmt > * fra vid og sans

(**that**) the King will be able to **carry** his **plans** **through**,
the nobility are **up in arms** (**about / over** the King's reforms).

* over at - * føre > * plan * igennem
~ gennemføre ...
* kampberedt, ~ i krigshumør / oprør (over ngt.)

So they **make strong attacks on** the King's **policies**.

* komme med ... * politiske tiltag

Ready for a **pitched battle with** his opponents,

* ~ voldsomt sammenstød med ng.

the King is ready to **do battle** (to **go through with** his **plans**).

* gå i kamp, ~ kæmpe

Ready to **do battle with** an opponent **over** the reforms,

* ... med ng. over ngt.

10 the King often has a **comprehensive exchange of words**,
a **passage of arms**, or an angry **passage with** his opponents.

* vidtspændende * ordveksling >
* dystende ordveksling / * ordveksling > med ng.
~ holmgang >

Revolving around the **class system**, a discussion

* dreje sig om ngt. * klasse- * system

easily developes into a **war of** ^{ˈwɜːds} **words**, and a **war of** ^{ˈnɜːvz} **nerves**
in the nature of psychological warfare

* krig på ord, ~ ordkrig * ~ nervekrig
* ~ have karakter af > * psykologisk * krigsførelse

Once in a while a debater pauses to **gather** his **wits**;

* ~ få samling på tankerne

he pauses to **collect** and **recover** his **wits**.

* =

Most points **link in /eE tie in with** earlier discussions.

* knytte sig til ngt.

Both parties accuse each other for using **loaded** words
and of coming up with **loaded** statements.

* ladet, belastende (ord)
* =

20 The **smooth manners** of many nobles **contrast sharply**
with the noble's **mischievous** hints and **hearts of darkness**.

* glat, slesk * manerer * ~ stå i skærende kontrast >
* til > * ondsindet (antydning) * ~ ondt hjerte

All kinds of **rumours** are **going (a)round**.

* rygter * ~ være i omløb

Going (a)round /E about starting vicious rumours

* gå omkring og - * starte > * ondsindede * rygter >
~ sætte i gang

about the King's mental health, **rumour(-)mongers** attempt to
smear the King by **spreading mischeivous, malicious**,
and **malevolent rumours** of the King's **inability**
^{maˈlevələnt}
to **keep / preserve** his **sanity**.

* om ng&t. * rygtesmed
* bagvaske ng. * udsprede > * ond- * onskabsfuld
sindet
* = * rygte om > * mangel på evne til at -
* bevare > * fornuft, tilregnelighed

A **commission of inquiry into** the **question** is **set up**.

* ~ undersøgelses- * angående * sag * nedsat
kommission

Issuing an official **denial of** the **circulating rumour**,

* dementi / benægtelse af > * cirkulerende

30 it issues a **denial that** there's any **truth in** the **rumour**.

* rygte * ... af at - * sandhed * i rygtet
~ rygtet (på nogen måde) taler sandt

Even if he is **cleared of** the charge of criminal **mischief**,

* rense ng. for ngt. * skade
ødelæggelse

a nobleman is still suspected of launching **smear campaigns**.

* smæde- * kampagne

Giving the prosecuter a dark, **malevolent stare**,

* onskabsfuldt * stirrende blik

and having a **malevolent grin on** his **face**,

* = * smil på læben

a witness is **held in contempt for** refusing to testify.

* ~ anse ng. for at have foragt (for retten) for at -

Disregarding this order, any person will be **held in contempt**,

* ~ betragte ng. som havende foragt for retten

and be **guilty of contempt of court**.

* skyldig i ngt. * foragt for retten

The witness could be **jailed** (two years) **for contempt**,

* fængsle ng. (en tid) for ngt. * foragt

while **malevolence in itself** is not punishable by law.

* onskabsfuldhed * i sig selv

474 Most noblemen can't relate to modern times	* ~ ikke forstå sig på ngt.
and the social development in the long term .	* på langt sigt
Most nobles can only relate to politics (U+sg. / pl.)	* ~ kun forstå sig på > * politik / politiske emner
which relate(s) to their own short-term interests.	* relatere sig til / angå / vedrøre ngt. * kortsigtet (interesse)
When they discuss politics and take a stand / position	* politik / politiske emner * tage stilling >
on it / them, they do it with a haughty and smug face .	* til ngt. * arrogant, hoven overlegen * selvtilfreds * ~ mine
When most nobles decide their attitude to politics, they are	* afgøre > * indstilling / holdning til ngt.
only in favour of politics (political ideas and activities)	* politiske emner
that relate to their own benefit.	* angå / vedrøre ngt.
10 The nobility generally hold the lower `classes in contempt ,	* betragte / opfatte ng. med foragt
and usually treat lower-`class people with (open) contempt .	* behandle ng. * med (åbenlys) foragt
Feeling contempt for the lower classes, the nobility	* føle > * foragt for ng.
look at them with disdain and undisguised contempt .	* med foragt / ringeagt * utilsløret ...
They show deep contempt for the lower classes,	* vise dyb foragt for ng.
and their behaviour often shows utter contempt for them.	* ... udpræget ...
The King can't relate to people like that, and regards	* forstå sig på ng.
their haughty behaviour as mean and contemptible .	* arrogant, hoven overlegen * foragtelig
Contemptuous of course of the King's reforms,	* fuld af foragt overfor ngt.
many noblemen are openly contemptuous of the King.	* åbenlyst ...
20 They even have the nerve to throw the King	* have nerver / være fræk nok til / ikke genere sig for at -
a contemptuous glance.	* foragtende (blik)
One day, an opponent of the King's reforms turns up	* dukke (uventet) op * selvtilfreds * overlegen
having a smug and haughty expression on his face.	* udtryk i ansigtet
Provoked by a smug and haughty smile on his face,	* <<
the King asks, ' What are you looking so smug about ?'	* selvtilfreds over ngt.
The nobleman is quick to point () out mistakes; too quick .	* hurtig til at -
' Not so fast – You've got to prove it first,' the King objects,	*
' And don't let your personal feelings cloud your judgement .'	* skygge for / forplumre > * dømmekraft
The King fastens on the term " of noble descent / stock "	* hæfte sig ved ngt. * af ædel afstamning ~ byrd
30 in the nobleman's answer while the nobleman fastens on	* =
the King's ideals of liberty, equality and fraternity .	* frihed, lighed og broderskab
The nobleman fastens on to the ideal of noble descent	* holde fast ved ngt.
while the King fastens onto his ideal.	* =
The King is offended by the iniquity of social prejudice,	* være forarget / stødt over ngt. * uretfærdighed
and by the iniquities of the justice system.	* = * forbrydelse
The King's assessment of the social imbalance	* vurdering * social > * ubalance
is partly based on the proposition that power corrupts .	* antagelse at - * (magt) korrumpere
The King gets on the nobleman's wick (E).	* ~ irritere ng. (komme på ng's vægge)
Remaining calm may not be an easy proposition / matter .	* forblive > * rolig * nem * opgave ~ bevare sindsroen

475 Being a **fast** and **penetrating thinker** whose **quickness** makes him an **articulate** and **quick-witted** debater, the King **articulates quick-witted** and **acute** questions, and **expresses articulate** and **sharp** answers.

The **wording** of the King's questions and **propositions** influences who will listen and **how** people react.

Thrown off balance by the King's **quick thinking**, many opponents **lose** their **composure in no time**.

As he is **quick on the uptake** and **quick off the mark**, **10** you'll have to be **first off the mark** to **outsmart** the King, and **quick on the draw** to **outwit** him.

Having a **haughty look on** his face, the nobleman keeps **clouding** the issue.

Unable to relate to up-to-date facts, the nobleman keeps **clouding** the issue with **antiquated** and **outdated** ideas.

Caught off balance, wording only stupid questions and answers, the nobleman seems quite **slow-witted**.

' Stop **beating about E/A around the bush**, and **come to the point** ! ' the King interrupts him after a while.

20 Even though the nobleman has been **slow off the mark**, he **has** a highly **volatile** personality, and a **quick** temper.

He's an old **misery** (E), so as he **is quick-tempered**, he's **quick to take offence**.

He might have **got out of bed on the wrong side** (E).

He might have **got up on the wrong side of the bed** (A).

His **nails** are **bitten (down) to the quick**.

He **is a quick-tempered** debater who can't control his **quicksilver / mercurial / volatile** temperament.

As he can't **deny (that)** he's **second off the mark**, **30** the nobleman reveals his **haughty** manners, by replying **with haughty disdain**.

The King's criticism **cuts** the nobleman **to the quick**.

His remarks **pierce** the nobleman **to the quick**.

As the King's remarks and criticism **sting** him **to the quick**, the nobleman quickly / soon **gets** very **heavy**.

He **gets heavy with** the King **about** the King's policies **oriented / E& orientated** to the needs of the underprivileged. Life isn't always **a bed of roses**.

The King continuously has to **iron () out** a lot of problems.

* hurtig * skarpsindig * tænker * hurtig opfattelsesevne
 * velformuleret * opvagt, snarrådig (debattør)
 * formulere / * opvag * skarp (-sindig) (spørgsmål) udtrykke ngt.
 * - = - * velformuleret * = (svar)
 * ~ ordvalg af > * forslag, forehavende, påstand
 * influere på > * hvxx * =
 * bringe ng. ud af balance / fatning
 * miste besindelsen / fatningen * meget hurtigt
 * hurtig i opfattelsen * hurtig i optrækket
 * hurtigst i optrækket * udmanøvrere / tage fusen på ng.
 * hurtig i aftrækket * =
 * arrogant, hoven * udtryk > * i ansigtet overlegen
 * forplumre ngt.
 * ude af stand til at - * forstå sig på * tidssvarende
 * forplumre (sagen) * forældet, bedaget * =
 * fanget > * ude af fatning * formulere / udtrykke ngt.
 * langsom i opfattelsen, tungnem
 * ~ snakke udenom
 * kom > * til sagen
 * ~ langsom i optrækket
 * have > * letpåvirkelig, lunefuld * ~ hidsigt (personlighed) (temperament)
 * surt spektakel * ~ hidsig, opfarende
 * hurtig til at - * ~ blive fornærmet
 * ~ få det forkerte ben ud af sengen
 * =
 * negl * bidt helt ned til > * kødet (ømt kød især det under neglene)
 * opfarende hidsig
 * ~ uberegneligt, letpåvirkelig (temperament)
 * benægte at - * komme fra start som nummer to
 * arrogant, hoven overlegen
 * med > * = * foragt, ringeagt
 * ~ smerte ng. dybt (skære ng. smerteligt)
 * = (stikke hul i / gennembore ng.)
 * = (stikke ng. i det ømme kød)
 * blive (meget) truende
 * ... overfor ng. pga. ngt.
 * orienteret mod ng.
 * rosenbed, ~ en dans på roser
 * ~ klare, overkomme (problem)

476 The nobility maintain that they are **qualified to bear** the **heavy responsibility for** the welfare of their subjects, **primarily** their simple desire for **hearth and home**.

Never hesitating to **deny** the **allegations** of the nobility, the King accuses the nobility of lack of responsibility, and ignorance of the **widening gap between** rich and poor.

As the noble **denies** the King's accusations **out of`hand**, the King **enlarges on** and **elaborates on** his accusations.

Developing his accusations **further**, **10** and **going more thoroughly into** his accusations, he **goes into details about** his accusations.

While the nobility **deny themselves** neither any pleasure nor any luxury, they **deny (that)** there is a **poverty problem**.

They either **deny** the **existence of** extreme poverty among the lower classes or **deny being** responsible for it.

The nobility **`abdicate responsibility / their responsibilities**.

The nobility **stand fast; living in the past**, they **stand firm**.

Blaming the troubles **on** the lower-class man's **inborn** inferiority and laziness, the nobility **wash** their **hands**.

20 They **deny** and **disclaim** the **responsibility for** poverty.

They **deny having responsibility for alleviating** poverty, and **refuse to accept** their **responsibility to relieve** poverty.

As the nobility **insist (up)on enjoying** their **privileges**, they **deny** the lower classes their basic human rights.

Clinging (on) to their privilege of **exemption from** taxation, the nobility **cling (on) to** their **resistance to** the reforms.

Holding on to their **demand that** the lower classes should **be denied** their claim to political influence, the nobility **influence** the government **with all** their **might to** **30 deny** the lower classes political influence.

The nobility **take a firm`line / stand on** traditional values.

Taking a firm line / stand against reform, they expect the King to **deny** political influence **to** the lower classes.

Just like he **denies** all **allegations of irresponsibility**, this nobleman in audience **denies that** the lower classes deserve any political influence.

The King **presents** the **proposition that** the oppression and exploitation of the lower classes by the aristocracy are damaging to economic growth, and social rest.

* kvalificeret til at - * bære >
 * tungt > * ansvar for ngt.
 * ildsted og hjem, ~ familieliv
 * afvise / benægte > * (tvivlsom) påstand
 *
 * voksende * gap / kløft mellem (rig og fattig)
 * benægte ngt. * ~ uden videre
 * udbygge / -dybe * =
 gå i detaljer med / nærmere ind på ngt.
 * - - - (anklage)
 * =
 * =
 * nægte sig ngt.
 * (be-) ... at - * fattigdoms- * problem
 * afvise / benægte > * eksistensen af ngt.
 * ... at -
 * fralægge sig ansvar / svingte deres ansvar
 * stå fast * leve i fortiden * =
 være urokkelig
 * skyde skylden for ngt. på ngt. * medfødt
 * ~ fralægge sig ansvaret
 * afvise / benægte > * fralægge sig > * ansvar for ngt.
 * - - - at - * (have) ansvar * afhjælpe (fattigdom)
 for at >
 * afvise / * vedkende sig > * ansvar for at > * - - -
 nægte at >
 * ~ holde fast ved at > * nyde godt af > * privilegier
 * nægte ng. ngt.
 * klynge sig til (privilegie) * fritagelse fra
 (skattebetaling)
 * - - - > * modstand mod ngt.
 * << * krav om at -
 * nægtes ngt.
 * påvirke ng. > * af al magt * til at -
 * nægte ng. ngt.
 * indtage en fast linje / et fast standpunkt mht. ngt.
 * - - - mod ngt.
 * & sætte sig imod ngt. til ng.
 * ligesom * afvise / * påstand om > * uansvarlighed
 benægte ngt.
 * ... at -
 *
 * fremsætte > * antagelse / påstand at -
 *
 *

477 Straight `off / out, the King calls attention to the fact that the situation is getting out of hand.

Without beating about E/A around the bush, he calls attention to the highly volatile / unstable situation from which riots are waiting to `develope.

Despite the nobleman's **repeated denials of simmering upheaval**, the King knows the nobleman is wrong.

The King has an **intent** look in his eyes.
in`tent
Listening **intently**, he looks **intently** at his opponent.

10 The nobility **are in denial**, and refuse to admit it, but **there's no denying / gainsaying** the social unrest.

There's no denying (the fact) that social unrest simmers as the lower classes strongly protest against the **denial of** their basic human rights.

It's a fact which **cannot** be **denied / gainsaid**.

It can't be denied that reforms are needed.

Scowling darkly at the King with a contemptuous look, the nobleman **creates a heavy atmosphere**.

With arms akimbo, he **hints darkly that** the King is **to blame**, and that he has not **heard the last of the matter**.

Looking at the King **with a scowl**, the nobleman's his eyes **burn darkly in the middle / midst** of his **heavy features**.

The nobleman **grins mischievously / malevolently**.

Arms akimbo, looking at the King with a **mischievous grin**, the nobleman has a **mischievous look** in eyes.

His voice is **heavy with irony** and **biting `sarcasm**, as he **speaks with heavy irony** and **heavy sarcasm**.

Acuteness is a **requisite** for success in a discussion with the King, and the nobleman is no great **light**.

30 He lacks the **requisite qualifications to be a match for** the King, and **cope with** him.

As a **fast thinker**, the King **quick-wittedly fastens on(to) / latches on to** a weak point in the nobleman's argument.

When the King's **mind alights (up)on a counterargument**, the **unstable** nobleman **has a face like thunder**.

His **face darkens** and his **eyes** are **full of mischief** as his own **arguments** are difficult to **sustain / uphold**.

There is a murderous **light** in his **eyes**. ! *Look at page 500 !*

His **face is like thunder**, and he **looks like thunder**.

* ~ lige ud ad landevejen * henlede opmærksomheden på >
* (det faktum) at - * (situation) komme ud af kontrol
* uden omsvøb
* ~ henlede opmærksomheden på > * påvirkelig / ustabil (situation)
* ~ kan udvikle sig / opstå når som helst lure under overfladen
* gentagen * afvisning / benægtelse af ngt.
* (simrende) ~ ulmende * omvæltning
* optaget, anspændt
* =
* ~ nægte at se kendsgerningerne i øjnene
* det kan ikke benægtes, at der findes ngt. eksistenses af ngt. kan ikke benægtes
* ~ det kan ikke (be-) nægtes at - * ~ ulme
* nægtelse af ngt.
*
* ikke kunne modsiges
* ... nægtes at -
* skule > * dystert / truende af ng. * med et foragteligt blik
* skabe en trykkende > * stemning
* ~ med hænderne i siden * antyde > * dystert / truende at -
* hørt det sidste ord i den sag
* skulende blik / udtryk
* ~ gløde > * mørkt, dystert * plumpe * ansigtstræk truende
* smile * ondsindet * onskabsfuldt
* ~ medhænderne i siden * = * grin, smil
* =
* ~ fuld af > * bidende > * sarkasme
* tale med > * ~ bidende * ironi / sarkasme
* skarpsindighed * nødvendighed for ngt.
* lys, lyst hoved
* fornødne * kvalifikationer for at - * ~ hamle op med / påkrævne * kunne måle sig med ng.
* hamle op med / klare ng.
* hurtig * tænker * kvikt og intelligent * hæfte sig ved ngt.
* - = -
* ~ tanker * lande på ngt. * modargument
* ~ pludselig komme i tanke om ngt.
* ~ uligevægtig * ~ se rasende ud
* ansigt > * formørkes * øjne * fuld af > * onskab
* argument * understøtte / opretholde <
* ~ blik * i ngs. øjne
* ansigt * ~ lyse af raseri * være gal i skralden

478 By outward appearance the revolting nobleman

is a **heavyweight** but by his **intellectual `make-up**,
he is a **lightweight** having difficulty **formulating** his ideas.

His **lightweight** arguments **bear little** or **no relation(ship)**;
they are not or not much **connected**, and **bear little** or **no**
relation(ship) to the **subject** of **conversation**.

Most noblemen are unable to **relate to** today's problems,
as they don't **relate to** the underprivileged classes.

The nobility **disdain** the lower classes
10 and their **contemptuous** manners.

The nobility **disdain** manual labour, and maintain that
the lower classes were created for it.

They **treat** the lower classes **with disdain**
and **look at** their manners **with disdain**.

The King **can't relate to** that.

As the nobleman **shows** a **disdain for** democracy,
and **shows** a **contempt for** the King's **outlook** (**on** society),
he shows a **contempt** and a **disdain for** the King.

Disdainful of people who are not noble of birth,
20 he keeps being **disdainful to** people of the lower classes.

His **contempt for** equality and **disdain for** democracy
is reflected in his **contempt** and **disdain** for the King.

Finding it difficult to **relate** today's problems in his mind,
the nobleman repeatedly **disdains to** reply.

He even **disdains** the King's offer of a glass of water
to **clear** his **voice**.

The nobleman doesn't understand that the problems **relate**.

So he doesn't understand how they are **related**,
and doesn't understand that they are **closely related**.

30 As the nobleman's arguments **relate to** conditions
ages ago, the King **counters** (him and his arguments)
(**with** up-to-date counterarguments).

The King **counters that** the nobleman
shows a **staggering contempt for** the **harsh realities**.

' You seem to **be** (**living**) in **cloud-cuckoo-land** (E).
(**A: cloudland** or **`la-la land**),' the King **counters** (him)

Still claiming that there's **no warrent for** criticism,
the nobleman maintains that there's no **warrant for** criticizing
the **established order**.

- * ydre * fremtoning * frastødende * sværvægter
- legemlig
- * åndelig * sammensætning, beskaffenhed
- * letvægter * formulere ~ sætte ord på (ide)
- * tyndbenet * have ringe / ikke nogen sammenhæng
- * forbundne * have ringe / ikke have nogen >
- * forbindelse til > * emne ⇔ * samtale-
- * relatere / forholde sig til / forstå ngt.
- * & have forståelse for ng.
- * foragte ng.
- * foragtelig
- * foragte ngt.
- *
- * behandle ng. med foragt
- * betragte ngt. ...
- * ikke have forståelse for ngt.
- * vise foragt for ngt.
- * - = - * anskuelse, syn (* på samfundet) ~ samfundssyn
- * ... for ng.
- * fuld af foragt for ng.
- * ... overfor ng.
- * foragt for ngt. * =
- * afspejles i ngt. * ... fo ng.
- * forbinde ngt.
- * afstå fra / være for stolt til at -
- * afslå ngt. af stoltned
- * klare stemmen
- * ~ have forbindelse til hinanden
- * & være forbundne, hænge sammen
- * være tæt forbundne, hænge nøje sammen have tæt forbindelse til hinanden
- * forholde sig til ngt.
- * imødegå ng. / ngt.
- *
- * svare igen at -
- * ... en * forbløffende * foragt for * barsk chokerende, rystende
- * drømmeland / -verden
- * = * svare (ng.) igen
- * berettiget grund til (kritik)
- * ... til at -
- * herskende * orden

479 Relating social rest and increased productivity,	* relatere / forbinde ngt. til ngt.
the reasoning behind the King's reforms	* begrundelsen bag ngt.
relates increased production to social welfare and social rest.	* relatere / forbinde ng. og ngt.
According to this reasoning, social rest and welfare	*
relate to democracy.	* ~ være forbundet til ngt.
As the discussion turns into a pitched battle between	* voldsomt (regulært) sammenstød mellem ng.
the two, a member of the court comes to the King's rescue .	* komme til > * ngs. undsætning
' It's all right, I can fight my own battles ,' the King	* kunne kæmpe > * sine egne kampe
assures him.	*
10 The King has and keeps his wits about him.	* ~ være / holde sig årvågen
He refers to the nobleman's disjointed arguments	* henvise til > * usammenhængende (argumenter)
as an expression of disjointed reasoning.	* som > * = (tankegang)
There's a thunderous expression on the nobleman's face .	* rasende udtryk > * i ngs. ansigt
He's talking a load of nonsense : a load of crap , a load of	* sige en bunke > * & sludder * pladder
bull (<shit), a load of garbage , and a load of rubbish .	vrøvl bræk * lort * bras * =
The King just crosses / folds his arms.	* ~ lægge armene over kors
Thunderstruck at the nobleman's facial expressions ,	* ~ overrasket og chokeret * ansigts- * udtryk
and having the nobleman's voice thundering in his ears ,	* tordne * i ørerne
the King stands silent with his arms crossed / folded .	* med > * armene over kors, ~ korslagte arme
20 ' I shall treat your suggestions with the contempt	* med (den) foragt
they deserve , ' he assures the nobleman after a while.	* (ngt.) fortjener
As the nobleman eventually appreciates that he has been	* blive klar over at -
outwitted by the King, a heavy silence falls upon the room.	* overvundet ved kløgt og snilde * (trykkende) stilhed taget fusen på sænke sig over ngt.
Outsmarted by the King, the nobleman is at his wits' `end .	* = * ~ ikke ane sine levende råd
' Down with the King and his bloody reforms ! ' he finally	*
thunders disdainfully (with) legs akimbo ,	* tordne * foragteligt * skrævende ben
and his loud voice thunderous and unpleasant.	* høj, kraftig * tordnende, vred
Giving the King a look of complete disdain ,	* foragt
he has a disdainful look on his face,	* foragteligt
30 and has a contemptuous look in his eyes.	* =
He even has the cheek / face to laugh haughtily .	* have den (kind / ansigt) ~ frækhed at - * hovent
It's clear that the nobleman is both wittingly	* være > * bevidst, vel vidende overlagt
and unwittingly in the process of committing lese-majesty .	* ubevidst, uoverlagt * ~ i gang * (begå) majestæts- uden at vide det med at - fornærmelse
As a rare exception , the King's quick wits fail to	* & undtagelsesvis * snarrådighed
get him out of an awkward situation.	*
Contrary to his intention, the haughty nobleman however	*
only accelerates King's zeal for reform , and thus he becomes	* iver efter > * reform (= reformiver)
the unwitting cause of the speeding up / stepping up ,	* ~ årsag til ngt. uden at vide det
and inavitaibility of reformation.	* fremskyndelse af ngt. * uafvendelighed af ngt.

480 As things have **got too heavy**, the King **exceptionally sends** an opponent **packing**.

In a highly **charged atmosphere**, the King **reminds** him,

'No one **twisted** your **arm about** coming to see me,'

There is a **lull in** the conversation and a **loaded silence**.

'The **quicker** you get away from her, the better –

and **never darken** my **door again**,' the king **raps (out)**.

There's a **startled expression on** the nobleman's **face**.

Anger / fury **smoulders in** his **eyes**.

10 His **eyes blaze / burn / smoulder with** anger / fury,

Packing his **bags**, the nobleman walks **quickly** away.

A **blaze of** anger **flashes across** his **face**.

As he **blazes up**, anger and disappointment **cloud** his **face**.

His **face clouds (over) with** anger / fury.

Barging his **way out**, **barging** his **way through** the rooms,
`ba~dʒing
down the stairs and **past** all the servants, **gaping**, **gawping**,

and **gawking at** him, he **barges** his **way to** the front door.

His behaves **extraordinarily** for someone in his position.

ik'strå~dnrêli E/A -nerêli
His sort of behaviour is **beneath contempt**, and the King

20 can't deny (that) this kind of **obduracy alarms** him.

`âbdjurêsi
'I'll **warrant (you)**,' the King assures the bystanders,

'I'll **warrent (that)** we won't see him again.'

The King **will lose no sleep over** such **obdurate** nobleman.

`âbdjurit
He **won't lose** (any) **sleep over** this **lightweight** opponent.

If suppressed and **denied**, emotions can be destructive

Denying the King **to** all those without appointments,

the King's secretary has to **deny** many **petitioners**.

Most noblemen think **the time is out of joint**,

while the **visionary** King accuses them of being

30 intellectual lightweights stuck in the **Dark Ages**

when it comes to their attitudes to reform and liberalism.

The **Dark Ages** in history is the period in Europe between
the end of the Roman Empire (476 AD) and the 10th century.

The **glimmer(<ing)s of** an **idea** often come to the king.

So as a **true visionary**, the king is **lighty ears ahead of**
most of the nobility with his policies to introduce democracy,
and policies to **maintain / sustain** economic **growth**.

Free (and fair) elections are **essential for**

the **sustenance of (a) true** parliamentary **democracy**.
`sûstênêns

* blive (for) belastende

* undtagelsesvis

* ~ sende ng. på porten

* anspændt

* atmosfære
stemning

* påminde ng.

* ~ tvinge ng. til at -

* ophold i

* ~ trykkende >

* stilhed

* hurtigere

* ~ sæt aldrig dine ben
over min dørtærskel igen

* udstøde

* forbløffet, overrasket
opskræmt

* udtryk

* i ngs. ansigt

* (vrede / raseri) ulme >

* i ngs. øjne

* ~ flamme af (vrede / raseri)

* ~ endegyldigt forlade et sted

* hurtigt

* opflamning af (vrede)

* brede sig hastigt henover
(ngs. ansigt)

* flamme op af vrede

* formørke >

* ngs. ansigt

* ansigt >

* ~ formørkes af (vrede / raseri)

* mase sig vej ud

* ... gennem ng.

* ... ned ad ng.

* ... forbi ng.

* se måbende på ng.

* mase sig vej til ng.

* usædvanligt, ~ grænseoverskridende

* under >

* (foragt), ~ lavmålet

* ikke kunne benægte at -

* stædig - /
forstokkethed

* forurolige ng.

* jer garanterer (dig)

* omkringstående

* ... at -

* miste >

* søvn over ng.

* stædig

* ~ ligge søvnløs på grund af ng.

* forstokket

* - = -

* letvægts-

* fornægte / nægte at anerkende (følelser)

* nægte (foretræde for) ng. til ng.

* afvise ng.

* ansøger

* ~ tiden er af lave

* visionær

* letvægter

* sidde fast i >

* den mørke middelalder

*

* <<

*

* antydningerne / glimtene af >

* ide

* sand

* visionær person

* lysår foran ng.

*

* opretholde >

* vækst

* frie (og retfærdige)

* valg

* væsentlig for >

* opretholdelse af >

* sandt

* demokrati
(demokratisk land)

481 A few noblemen who try to **steal** the King's **thunder** are met with a **shake of the head**.

The news about the King's **startling** ideas and initiative **hits** most of the nobility **like a thunderbolt**, and **jolts** them **out of** their **dreams**, and **into action**.

They **are startled** by the King's reforming **zeal**.

It **startles** them **to** know about his **zeal in** reform-making, and his related plans in **startling** contrast to their own.

The King **has (got) a load of** friends, except among **10** the nobility where **has (got) loads of** (E) enemies.

The nobility **keep () up** and **safeguard** their privileges with great and **inveterate passion** and **fondness**.

He gets a **load** of letters **containing loads and loads of** complaints about his reform plans.

The nobility **are thunderstruck** and **look thunderstruck** as they consider the **progressive** King to **stand in** their **light**, and also **stand in** his **own light**.

The **heated** and **highly charged debate** **revives old hatreds** and **prejudices** that **simmer below** the **surface**.

20 Reluctant to join hands with far-sighted advisers, the nobility join hands with **forces of the past**.

Reluctant to join hands with **forces of the future**, looking (up)on the King's reforms **with inveterate** distrust, they **thunder against** the **evils of** liberal reforms.

Feeling a deep / pure hatred for / of reform, looking at the reforms **with passionate / profound hatred**, the nobility **feel** nothing but **hatred for / of** the King.

Filled with an intense, inveterate hatred towards the King, the nobility look for a **chink in** the king's **armour**; **30 a weakness or weak point in** his character, argument etc. that can be used in an attack.

As they **expect** the King **to** make a **big mistake**, the nobility are **waiting for** him **to** make a **serious mistake**.

A **grave mistake** is the opportunity they are **waiting for**.

The nobility **vilify** the King's **attitude as** dangerous, and **for being** an **encouragement of lightning strikes** as a **weapon in** the **class` conflict**, and the **class struggle**

A place or time could be the **tinderbox** that might plunge the country into civil war, and **wipe () out** the nobility.

- * stjæle > ~ opmærksomheden / ngs. ideer fra ng.
- ~ tage ordet ud af munden på ng.
- * ~ hovedrysten
- * overraske- / forbløffe- / forskrække- / opskræmmende
- * ramme ng. * som en tordenkile
- ~ komme som et chok for ng.
- * ryste ng. * ud af > * drøm * til handling
- * være overrasket / forbløffet / * (reform-) iver forskrækket over >
- * det overrasker etc. ng. at - * iver i (reformskabelse)
- * overraskende etc.
- * have en bunke (venner)
- * have masser af (fjender)
- * hæge om ngt. * værne om ngt.
- * forhærdet, indgroet * lidenskab * forkærlighed uforbedelig /
- * bunke, masse * indeholde > bunke- / massevis
- *
- * være som ramt af lynet ~ himmelfalden, målløs
- * fremskridtsvenlig * stå i vejen for ng.
- * ... sig selv
- * ophedet * ~ stærkt ophidset * debat * genoplive >
- * gammel * had * fordom * simre under > * overfladen nag
- * uvillig til at - * fatte > * hænder med ng. * fremsynet ~ samarbejde med ng.
- * ~ gårdsdagens kræfter / magtfaktor
- * fremtidens ...
- * med indgroet (mistro)
- * tordne mod ngt. * ~ skadevirkninger ved ngt.
- * føle > * dyb / ren > * had overfor ngt.
- * med > * lidenskabelig / dybfølt * had
- * føle > * had mod ng.
- * fyldt med > * intens * indgroet * had mod ng.
- * sprække i > * rustning ~ ngs. svage punkt
- * svaghed * svagt * punkt i ngt.
- *
- * forvente ng. ⇔ at - * stor * fejl
- * vente på ng. ⇔ at - * alvorlig * =
- * graverende * fejl * vente på ngt.
- * nedrakke > * holdning * som (farlig)
- * for at være > * opmuntring til > * ~ vild * strejke uvarslet
- * våben i > * klasse- * konflikt * ... - * kamp
- * (fyrtoj), ~ krudttønde
- * udslette ng.

482 The nobility are **quick to point out social dysfunction(s)**, and **leave the King to take the rap** (for the nobility).

They are **too quick** to leave the King to **take the rap for** social unrest even if the **responsibility lies with** the nobility.

The nobility maintain their right to punish members of their staff who are disobedient and **join a strike**.

The nobility don't realize that the King's reforms, abolishing their privileges, are an urgent need to prevent a **class `war**; a merciless **civil `war** and **internecine class warfare**
intê`ni~sain
10 that might led to virtual **wipeout** of the nobility itself.

The King's **inveterate** opponents **thunderously** try to **muzzle his advocates**.

Although many **advocates of** democracy consider the king to **be in their light**, the **course of events** will one day **prove the opposite**.

In the **course of time**, **`epoch-making events** will inevitably **happen**, and change the society.

The decisions taken by both parties will influence the **march of events** now and in the **march of time**.

20 The **`progress of events** will one day **prove** the King (**to be**) **right**, and **prove** his **foresight**.

The **sequence of events** will one day **prove** that many noblemen by their **thunderous** aversion to reform (U) **stood in their own light**.

Their reactionary **narrow-minded / blinkered attitudes** to reform **serve only** to **quicken** anti-nobility feelings.

The nobility's **resorting to ingrained confidence** in their **inherited** privileges **lulls** their **anxiety**, and **lull** them **into a false sense of security**.

30 Turning a blind eye to the **disturbing, disquieting, worrying**, and **alarming** development of the society, most noblemen are **lulled by** their own **smugness**; too much **self-satisfaction**, (**self-**) **complacency** **self-confidence** and **self-sufficiency**.

Projecting their **mind into** the future only just **according to** their **own `lights**, the nobility is **lulled into** believing that **everything in the garden** is **lovely**.

It may be **the lull before the storm**.

* hurtig til at - * funktionsforstyrrelse (-r)
* overlade (det til) ng. at - * tage skraldet (for ng.)
* for hurtig til at - * ... for ngt.
* ansvar > * ligge hos ng.
*
* opsætsig * deltage / gå med i > * strejke
*
* klasse- * ~ kamp
* borger- * krig * gensidig ødelæggende * = * ~ kamp
* udslettelse af ngt.
* forhædet * rasende
* give ng. mundkurv på * fortaler
fortaler
* fortaler for / forsvarer af (demokrati)
* være i vejen for ng. * gang ⇔ * begivenhedernes
* bevise > * det modsatte
* ~ i tidens løb * epokegørende * begivenhed
* indtræffe
*
* ~ begivenhedernes gang * i tidens løb / med tiden
* = * vise (at) ng.
* have ret * vise > * ngs. forudseenhed
* rækkefølge af > * begivenheder * be-, vise at -
~ den almindelige udvikling
* rasende
* ~ stå i vejen for sig selv
* snæversynede / ~ = * holdninger
* tjene kun til at - * forstærke (følelser)
* tilflugt til > * indgroet * tiltro til ngt.
* nedarvet (privilegie) * bringe / * bekymring
dysse ngt. til ro
* lulle ng. ind i en falsk følelse af sikkerhed
* forstyrrende * foruroligende
* & bekymrende * alarmerende (udvikling)
* ~ narret af > * selvtilfreds- / -god-
/ -behagelighed
* =
* =
* sende > * ~ tankerne ud i (fremtiden)
* som man har evner / forstand til
* narre ng. til at -
* ~ der er ingen ko på isen
(så længe rumpen er på land)
* ~ stilhed før stormen

483 Seen in that light, the nobility need to wake up.

They haven't yet **woken up** to the **seriousness**, or rather, the **gravity of the situation**.

It's about / high time the nobility **woke up to the fact that** the times have changed.

Nevertheless, most nobles **stand fast / firm**, or **stick fast**.

Many nobles don't **awake to the fact that** some changes are **inevitable**.

The nobility **need to awaken to** new times.

10 So as they **need awakening**, they need visionary leaders to **awaken them to the fact** that the times have changed.

The success of emerging parliamentarism should be a **wake-up call to** all **hidebound** noblemen.

Even if the nobles **show () off** their **refined manners**, they often **give way to / betray** their **heavy-handed manners** when it comes to **having their (own) will**.

In order to consolidate their position, the **condescending** nobles often **employ / practise heavy-handed methods of managing** their estates, and **for managing** their businesses.

20 Clinging on to **the heavy hand** of management, many lords as well as their dispositions are **heavy going**; they are difficult to deal with and difficult to understand.

They often **make heavy weather of** simple doings.

As it is, the nobility heavily profits from the fact that

the **obsolete** administration **procedures** of the current society are discriminating, **clumsy** and **time-consuming**.

Along with the problems caused by the privileged nobility, an area that **warrants** attention, consideration etc. is the **want of** enlightenment and education **of** the lower classes.

30 So with the **reformist** King as the **initiator of** reform, his government **initiates** a **programme of** economic reform, and **on the initiative of** the King, the government **sets / puts in motion** a **rolling programme** of social reform.

As the government **launches** its **programmes to** reform the society, **the wheels of change** are **set / put in motion**.

Each time the speaker **puts forward / tables / proposes** a **motion**, some members of the parliament who have to vote **go through the motions (of voting for the motion)**.

* set i det lys * være nødt til at - * vågne op (fig.)

* ... til ngt. * alvor ⇔

* alvor ⇔ * situationens

* det er på tide at - * vågne op til > * det faktum /
/ høje - - - den kendsgerning at -

* stå fast * sidde fast

ikke lade sig ændre
* ~ blive klar over at -

* uundgåelig

* ~ være nødt til at - * vågne op til ngt.

* ~ have behov for at - * vågne op (fig.)
opvågning

* ~ gøre ng. bevidst om / klar over at -

*

* advarsel / varsko til ng. * forstokket

* vise ngt. frem, vigte sig af ngt. * forfinede * manerer

* ~ (ufrivilligt) afsløre > * hårdhændede ...

* få sin vilje

* nedladende

* anvende / bruge / * hårdhændet * metode til at -
benytte sig af >

* håndtere (ejendom) * ... (forretninger)

* (den hårde hånd), ~ hårdhændet (ledelse)

* ~ svær at have med at gøre / svær at forstå

*

* ~ gøre et stort nummer ud af ngt.

*

* forældet * (administrations-) procedure
& forvaltnings- (fremgangs-) måde

* kluntede * tids- * ~ krævende

*

* fortjene / behøve (opmærksomhed, overvejelse)

* mangel på / behov for ngt. * for ng.

* reformvenlig * initiativtager til / igangsætter af ngt.

* igangsætte > * program for ngt.

* på initiativ af ng. * reformivrig

* igangsætte > * ~ løbende > * program

* ... > * ~ plan om at -

* ~ forandringens hjul * være sat i bevægelse

* fremlægge / fremsætte >

* (beslutnings-) forslag

* gøre sin ufrivillige pligt (at stemme for forslaget)

TREASON

484 At all events, the society will change **radically**

and, **in any event – when it comes to the point –**

the nobility will lose their **constitutional** power.

After all – when all is said and done – many noblemen
will lose their **fortunes** and privileged **precedence**.

Confident, however, that they could keep their power,
they will **have a rude awakening**.

All the same, if it comes to the point, the noblemen
will just **await a chance to act counter** to the King's wishes,
10 and **counteract** his bad influence.

The **reactionary** noblemen **wait in order to counter**.

They **wait to counter** the King's **initiative**
with **counterinitiatives** that don't **go / run counter to**
their fundamental interests.

Many **reactionaries** already have plans
of how to **retrieve** an **eventual** loss of formal power,
of how to **retrieve** their businesses **from** financial ruin
and **retrieve** their fortunes.

In the event, the **retrieval** (U) of their power and fortunes
20 **turnes / turned out severely limited**.

Before then, a **strange sequence of events**, however,
forces the King to **plunge** the country **into war**.

One nobleman **intentionally betrays** the King.

When he does so, it's quite **intentional**.

Another nobleman, a **deceitful court creep**,
has **misled** a young lady by **intriguing with** her, and soon
after **broken** her **heart** by **calling () off** their **engagement**.

By **breaking () off** their **engagement**,
this **`double-tonged, perfidious, and treacherous** lover,
30 has in this way **unintentionally** made the young lady
- `ten-
throw herself **straight into** the **arms** of a traitor.

That was quite **unintentional**.

The King **suffers a major setback**
when some **unforeseen** and **unforseeable** problems appear.

Unforeseen circumstances **subsequent of** a nobleman's
intrigue with a young lady prove to be a **setback for** the King.

Unforseeable circumstances prove to **represent**
a temporary **setback in** the King's reform process.

* forrædderi

* i alle tilfælde / al fald * radikalt
under alle omstændigheder grundlæggende
* i hvert tilfælde * når det kommer til stykket
/ fald / alt kommer til alt
* forfatnings- / grundlovsmæssig

* når det kommer til stykket * =
/ alt kommer til alt
* formue * forrang

*

* få et brat opvågnen

* alligevel * hvis det kommer til stykket

* vente på > * chance / * handle > * stik imod ngt.
anledning til at -
* imødegå / modvirke / -arbejde ngt.

* reaktionær * vente, med det formål at - * svare igen
fremskridtsfjendsk

* = * imødegå / modsætte sig * initiativ
kæmpe imod >

* modinitiativ * gå imod ngt.

*

* reaktionær / fremskridtsfjendsk person

* genvinde / få ngt. tilbage * eventuel, mulig
redde / genopbygge ngt. endelig, sluttelig
* ... fra ngt.

* <<

* ~ da det kommer / kom til stykket * generhvervelse

* viser sig / * stærkt / yderst begrænset
viste sig at være -

* inden da * besynderlig * række af begivenheder

* kaste ng. ud i krig

* forsætligt, med vilje * forråde ng.

* tilsigtet

* bedragerisk, troløs * hof- * kryb
~ snog

* føre ng. på afveje * have en hemmelig
affære med ng.

* knuse ngs. hjerte * hæve > * forlovelse

* bryde > * =

* tvetunget, ~ bedragerisk * bedragerisk * =

* uforsætligt, utilsigtet * kaste / skubbe ng. >

* lige i armene på ng.

* <<

* lide et > * ~ alvorligt * tilbageslag

* uforudsete > * uforudsigelige (problemer)

* uforudsete (omstændigheder)

* hemmelig affære med ng. * tilbageslag for ng.

* uforudsigelige (omstændigheder) * ~ stå for >

* tilbageslag i ngt.

485 The nobility want to **marginalize** the King.

^{ma~dʃinelaiz}

Although he is **heavy** **hitter** (eA) they **work at**

sidelining the King as they don't want him to play a role as a political **heavyweight**.

Although most of the nobility are political **lightweights**, they work on **pushing** the King **to the sidelines** as they want him only to watch **from the sidelines** while they **cling on to power** or **struggle for** more.

Many aristocrats **counterwork in** the **open**,

10 and some openly **malign** the King in the press.

Having an **unremitting war on with** the King, some nobles **unremittingly counter** and **counterwork** the King

Counteracting and **counterworking** the King's reforms, they want to **counterbalance** and **counterpoise** his reforms.

Submitting counterproposals and **counterpropositions**, they want their **counteraction** and **counterwork** to **act as a counterbalance to** liberal reforms.

In spite of all the nobility's **counterpressure**, all their **counterforces** and **countermeasures**, **20** their **counterstatements** and **counterdeclarations**, **countermanifestos** and **counterpropaganda**, **counterdemonstrations** and **counterclaims**, the **counteractive** noblemen's **counterviews** as well as the **countertendencies** of the rest of the society are too weak to **countervail** the King's reforms.

In vain the **counteractors** of the nobility **counterclaim** a **counterreformation**.

As all **counterreforms** are **watered () down**, they are not able to **countercheck** the liberal reforms.

30 The liberal reforms **kindle** much **interest** and **enthusiasm** among academic **nonrevolutionary social reformers**.

When all is said and done, the King's reforms are popular with the **mass of (the) citizens / (the) people**.

After all, the King's reforms are popular with the **masses**.

The **epidemic craze / fad for** reform and democracy that proves to be more that a **passing craze / fad** is a **shot in the arm** for the King.

Burning with a desire to reform the society, the King is **burning to** have his reforms passed.

* marginalisere ng. / køre ng. ud på et sidespor

* arbejde på / tumle med at -

* <<

* sværvægter

* letvægter

* køre ng. ud på et sidespor

* fra sidelinien

* klynge sig til > * magten * kæmpe for ngt.

* lave modarbejde * ~ åbenlyst
være i opposition

* skade / bagtale / tale ondt om ng.

* ~ ligge i > * uophørlig > * krig med ng.

* uophørligt * opponere (imod ng.) * modarbejde ng.
ihærdigt modarbejde (ng.)

* ... ngt. * =

* afbalancere ngt. / danne modvægt mod ngt.

* fremsætte > * modforslag * =

* modstand / -virken / -arbejdning * =

* virke som > * modvægt til ngt.

* modtryk

* modkræfter * modforholdsregler

* moderklæring * moderklæring

* modmanifest * modpropagande

* moddemonstration * modkrav

* modarbejdende * modanskuelser

* modtendenser

* opveje / modvirke ngt.

* forgæves * modarbejder * stille modkrav om ngt.

* modreformation

* modreform * udvande <

* modvirke ngt.

* vække > * interesse * entusiasme

* ikke revolutionære * samfunds- * reformator

* når alt kommer til alt, i sidste ende

* hovedparten af > * borgere * folk

* << * masserne

* ~ hastigt bredende sig * kortvarig interesse for ngt.

* forbigående, flygtig * modelune, grille

* ~ saltvandsindsprøjtning for ng.

* (brænde), ~ optændt af > * ønske

* brænde efter at -

486 Circumstances, however, **conspire against** the King and his reforms, so the King and his reforms **lose popularity**.

A **chain of events conspires to** make the political situation very **tense**.

There's a **conspiracy of silence** within the nobility **about** the popularity of King's reforms with the masses.

In revolt over the King and his reforms, members of the **conspiratorial** opposition
kênspirê`tâ~riêl
have private talks to form a conspiracy.
kên`spirêsi
10 In public, their voices become low and **conspiratorial** as they **whisper** (something) **conspiratorially** (**to** each other) in a **conspiratorial tone**.

Having **secret talks**, and having a **malign** influence upon the **weaker brethren** (pl.), a small **core** of opponents **form a conspiracy against** the King and his reforms.

Arriving at an agreement, they form a **conspiracy to oppose** (the King) **reforming** the society.

Making a private / secret agreement, the **conspirators**
- `spi - **conspire against** the King and his reforms.

20 They **conspire to** bitterly oppose the King's reforms.

Hatching schemes and **making back-`room deals**, they **conspire together to** oppose the King.

Although the King **keeps** his opponents **at arm's length**, a **traitor** at the King's court **secretly consorts with**
- ` - some **hard-`core** conspirators.

Having **joined** the conspiracy to **overthrow** the King, he **conspires with** a **hard `core of fellow conspirators**.

Conspiring with them **to revolt against** the King,
ri`vêult
he **plots with** them **to overthrow** the King.

30 Writing **vicious open `letters to** the King, the **plotters** have **opened war on** him and his position.

Secretly **plotting against** the King, the hard-`core conspirators **plot** the King's **overthrow**
Hatching a plot (**against** the King), the hard core even **hatch a plot to assassinate** the King.

The **treacherous** conspirators **plot to** assassinate the King.
At all events, any **appearance before** the **public** by the King or his family **warrants** a large police presence.

* omstændighederne * konspirere / sværge sig sammen imod ng&t. * popularitet
* miste > * ... for at -
* kæde af > * begivenheder
* (høj-) spændt
* ~ stiltiende enighed om fortælle >
* omkring ngt.
* i oprørstilstand over ngt.
* konspiratorisk, sammensværgesk
* føre underhåndssamtale * danne > * konspiration sammensværgelse
* <<
* hviske (ngt.) * <<<
* (til ng.) * <<<<
* & underhåndssamtale * skadelig, ondartet
* svagere * (ånds-) brødre * kerne af ng. & ubefæstede sjæle
* danne > * konspiration / sammensværgelse rettet mod ng&t.
* nå til > * aftale * sammensværgelse >
* for at - * modsætte sig (ng. ⇔ at -) * reformere ngt.
* lave > * ~ underhåndsaftale * sammensvoren
* konspirere / sværge sig sammen imod ng&t.
* sværge sig sammen for at -
* udklække > * skumle planer * lave > * ~ underhånds- ~ lave rævekager aftaler
* konspirere / sværge sig sammen for at -
* holde ng. på tilbørlig afstand / tre skridt fra livet
* forræder * hemmeligt * omgås / pleje omgang med ng.
* (hårde kerne) ~ forhærdet
* slutte sig til ng. * vælte ng.
* konspirere med > * hård kerne af > * medsammen- svorne
* sværge sig sammen * gøre oprør mod ng. med ng. for at -
* lægge skumle planer med ng. for at - * vælte ng.
* skrive > * vrede, hadefulde * åbne breve til ng.
* komplotmager * indlede en krig / de sammensvorne kamp mod ng&t.
* lægge planer rettet mod ng.
* lægge skumle planer for / * omstyrtelse pønse på ngt. fald
* udklække > * komplot * rettet mod ng. skummel plan
* << * med det formål at - * snigmyrde ng.
* lands- / * planlægge på skummel vis at - kongeforrædderisk
* unde alle * fremtræden / * for offentligheden omstændigheder visen sig >
* berettigede / nødvendiggøre ngt.

487 There's often a **conspiracy of silence surrounding people** (having **ended**) in the nobility's **pocket**.

The police are constantly on their search for a **missing`link** in their attempts to **foil** a possible **assassination plot** by **detecting** and **disclosing** / **uncovering** conspiracies.

In order to **clear** her **conscience**, a **conspiratrees**,
-`spi-
however, **startlingly reveals** a **conspiratorial secret**.

The secret was a too **heavy load** for the **traitress to carry**, and her **heart** is **loaded with regret**.

10 First she has **betrayed** her mother's **trust**.

Then she has **betrayed** the King **to** the conspiracy.

Having **betrayed** state secrets **to** the **traitorous** conspiracy, she has **betrayed** the King and her country.

She **regrets that** her **broken heart** and wounded pride made her **betray** her **beliefs**.

It is to be regretted that people's hurt feelings make them **betray** their **ideals**.

It is regrettable that people's hurt pride makes them **disloyal to** their **ideals**.

20 **Regretting how** she has **betrayed** her **principles**, she **regretted what** she had done.

Her **traitorous** and **treasonable** / **treasonous** misdeeds **hung** / **lay`heavy on** her.

The **betrayal of** the King **hung** / **lay heavy on** her **heart**, and the **betrayal of** her ideals **hung** / **lay heavy on** her **conscience**.

The **betrayor** had begun to feel sharp **twinges of regret**.

Feeling **pangs of regret** she began to realize that her practice didn't **consort with** her conscience.

30 Realizing the **burdensome consequences of** (**having**) a **bad** / **guilty conscience**, and of saying anything that would make her **betray herself**, she soon began to **regret** her participation **in conspiracy**.

She **deeply regretted** her decision to **join** the conspiracy.

She **greatly regretted** joining the conspirators.

So the conspiratress decided to **betray** the conspiracy, and **inform on** / **against** her fellow conspirators.

' If you don't do it now, you'll **only regret it** – if you don't do it, you'll **live to regret it**,' she'd thought.

* ~ en mur af > * tavshed * ~ omkring >

* folk * (komme) * ~ i lommen på ng.

* manglende * (informations-) led / brik

* forhindre ngt. * mord- * komplot sammensværgelse

* opdage > * afdække / -sløre (sammensværgelse)

* rense sin samvittighed * sammensvoren kvinde

* overraskende * afsløre > * konspiratorisk * hemmelighed

* tung byrde for ng. ⇔ at bære * forræderinde

* hjerte * tynget af > * fortrydelse sorg, ærgrelse

* svigte ngs. tillid

* forråde ng. til ng.

* afsløre / røbe ngt. til ng. * forræderisk

* forråde ng.

* fortryde at - * ~ hjertesorg

* forråde / svigte * & det man tror på

* det er beklageligt at -

* svigte sine idealer

* <<

* illoyal mod > * (sine) idealer

* angre / fortryde hvordan - * svigte sine principper

* ... hvad -

* forræderiske * lands / konge - ... (ugerninger)

* hvile tungt på ng.

* forræderi mod ng. * tynge ngs. hjerte

* svigt overfor (idealer) * ... ngs. >

* samvittighed

* forræder * anfald (smertende stik) af anger

* =

* kunne følges / harmonere med (samvillighed)

* byrdefuld * konsekvens / følge af (at) ngt.

* (have) dårlig samvittighed

* afsløre sig

* fortryde ngt. * i sammensværgning

* inderligt angre / fortryde ngt. * deltage i ngt.

* voldsomt * ... at - * slutte sig til ng.

* afsløre / røbe ngt.

* informere om / ~ angive ng.

* bare ville fortryde det

* ~ fortryde / ærgre sig over ngt. resten af livet

488 Her voice betrays the anxiety she's trying to hide	* afsløre ngt.		
when she betrays her co-conspirators to the King.	* afsløre ng. overfor / røbe ng. til ng.		
Her trembling voice betrays the fact that	* skælvende (stemme	* ... (det faktum /	
joining the conspiracy was a regrettable decision:	* fortrydelig	den kendsgerning) at -	
a stupid thing to do which she bitterly regrets .	* bittert angre / fortryde ngt.		
Making an object apology with a regretful look in her eyes,	* give > * ydmyg * undskyldning	* angerfuld	
she expresses her regret at her intended action as well as	* anger over ngt.	fuld af fortrydelse	
her regret at the unintended consequences of her actions.	* ... for ngt.	* påtænkt	
As much as she regrets ever having betrayed the King,	* fortryde at -	tilsigtet	
10 she has / feels no regrets about betraying the conspiracy.	* være ked af at -	* utilsigtet	
Sounding genuinely regretful , she apologizes regretfully .	* oprigtigt	* angerfuld	* fuld af ...
Nevertheless, the traitress has a (heavy) cross to bear .	* ... et (tungt) kors at bære		
Betraying the King is her greatest regret .	* største fortrydelse		
Telling the King the startling truth, she unburdens her mind	~ det man mest fortryder		
as she unburdens her heart , and unburdens herself.	* overraskende	* lette sit sind	
	forbløffende	/ sin samvittighed	
	* lette sit hjerte	* =	
Imploring the King's forgiveness, she slumps to her knees .	* trygle ng. om ngt.	* ~ falde på >	* knæ
The traitress hopes to retrieve her honour .	* genvinde sin ære		
Hoping for the retrieval of her honour ,	~ rehabiliter sig		
she hopes her character is not beyond retrieval .	* rehabilitering		
20 At least she hopes for a fairly light punishment .	* skudsmål	* hinsides genoprettelse	
	rygte	umulig at genvinde, uigenkaldelig	
	* ~ mild	* straf	
Thanks to her eventual loyalty to the King,	* endelig, sluttelig		
her regretful character is not past retrieval .	i sidste ende		
Her confession takes a load off her mind .	* fuld af ærgrelse / sorg	* < =	
It is a load off her mind .	fortrydelse		
A tear traces a path down her cheek.	* tilståelse	* ~ få en sten til at falde fra ngs. hjerte	
Are tears a woman's weapon ?	* =		
The faintest trace of a smile seems to appear on her face.	* ~ bane sig vej		
Her heart lightens as she lightens her conscience .	* våben		
She admits she intended revenge acting in collusion with	* svagest	* spor / antydning af ngt.	
30 the traitor but she never intended things to turn out	* ~ blive lettere om hjertet	* lette > * sin samvittighed	
the way they did; things turned out in a way never intended .	få bedre samvittighed		
Merely intending her actions as a revenge towards	* påtænke /	* handle i >	* ledtog med ng.
the court creep, she had then been led astray by the traitor.	være opsat på ngt.	(~ hemmeligt samarbejde)	
The King has taken a load off her mind ,	* ... ngt ⇔ at (skulle) -		
and again she feels free to join in a conversation.	* på en måde	* påtænkt	
The King bears the penitent traitress no malice .	* påtænke ngt. som ngt.		
As he reforms her, and she reforms , a burden lifts .	* ledt på afveje af ng.		
She never regrets her decision to inform the King,	* ~ vælte en sten fra ngs. hjerte		
and he'll never know her to betray a confidence .	* deltage i ngt.		
	* ~ ikke bære >	* angerfuld	* nag til ng.
		bodfærdig	
	* ~ få ng. til at	* forbedre sig	* ~ en sten falder
	forbedre sig		fra ngs. hjerte
	* fortryde ngt.		
	* afsløre / røbe >		* fortrolighed

489 Having taught the naive and gullible traitress a lesson

by **pointing out** her naivety **to** her, and **expostulated with** her **about** her **gullibility**, the King **makes** her a **counteroffer**.

Accepting the King's **expostulation**, the young lady agrees in acting as an **informant / informer** so the King will be able to **countercheck** information on his enemies in order to **keep a countercheck on** his information.

Intrigued by the young lady and **by** her **intriguing** story, the King takes care to **lay a fast hold on** the young lady, **10** and **keep a watchful eye on** the **intriguing** young lady until he's convinced that she's **reliable** and **trustworthy**.

Convinced of her **reliability** and **trustworthiness**, the King **relies heavily on** the former traitress, now acting as a **double-dealer** and a **double-crosser**.

Having regained her **self-reliance**, the young lady has become an independent and **self-reliant** person.

As she proves to be **reliable** supporter, and a **steadfast** and **reliable** friend, they become **fast friends**.

The King **relies on** his informer **for** information.

20 He **relies on** her telling **to** tell the truth.

He **relies on** her **to** hear the truth.

As his informer can be **relied on to** keep their secret, the King **relies on** secret information coming from his informer.

As she **double-crosses** the conspirators, the King **relies on** her **double-cross (C)** to lead to the arrest of the conspirators.

As his information comes from a **reliable source**, the King is **reliably informed about** the conspiracy.

The information from his **double-dealer casts / throws doubt on** some noblemen's motives and **reliability**.

30 The King **relies heavily (up)on** his informer's **secrecy**.

Heavily reliant (up)on her and her **double-dealing (U)** the **other way round**, he is and **heavily dependent (up)on** her and her **counterchecks**.

In order to **make a countermove**, the King and his informer start to **countermove**.

Eager to **counterplot** a few adherents of the King **form a counterplot**.

Some **sources of information** are totally **unreliable**.

- * ~ give ng. > * godtroende * en lærestreg
nem at narre
- * påpege ngt. overfor ng. * protestere overfor ng. >
~ foreholde ng. ngt. > ~ bebrejde ng. (ngt.)
- * vedr. > * godtroenhed * give ng. > * modtilbud
- * indsigelse, bebrejdelse
protest
- * meddeler, anmelder,
angiver stikker
- * efterkontrollere ngt.
- * holde > * genkontrol
modforholdsregel
- * fascineret af ng. / ngt. * fængslende (historie)
- * ~ holde ng. i stramme tøjler
- * holde et vågent øje med ng. * fascinerende
- * pålidelig * =
til at stole på
- * pålidelighed
- * stole meget på ng.
- * dobbeltspiller * dobbeltbedrager
-snyder / -svindler
- * selvtilid
- * selvtilidsfuld
- * pålidelig (støtte) * ~ trofast >
~ til at stole på
- * = (ven) * ~ fine / svorne venner
- * være afhængig af ng.
- * stole på / være afhængig af ng. ⇔ at -
- * ... ng. ⇔ at -
- * stole på ng. ⇔ at -
- * være afhængig ngt. ⇔ at -
- * dobbeltbedarge / * stole på >
-snyde / -svindle ng.
- * dobbeltbedrag * ngt. ⇔ at -
-snyd / .svindel
- * pålidelig * kilde
- * pålideligt * informeret om ngt.
- * dobbeltspiller * kaste / ~ så >
- * tvivl om > * pålidelighed
- * stole afgørende på / * diskretion
sætte sin lid til >
- * dybt afhængig af ng. / ngt. * dobbeltspil
- * den modsatte vej * ... af afhængig af ng. / ngt.
- * efter-, dobbeltkontrol
- * lave > * modtræk
- * ~ lave modtræk
- * lægge modplaner, modsammensværgelse sig
- * danne * modsammensværgelse
- * kilde til > * information * upålidelig
~ informationskilde

490 Shrouding his measures in secrecy, the King keeps

his knowledge of the **treachery secret from** everybody.

Only **as regards** the Queen, he feels obliged to

go so far as to lift a corner of the veil of secrecy.

So one night when he **comes to bed** and she's still **awake**,
he **touches lightly on** the problem.

Intending (to stage) an uprising / a rebellion / a revolt
(**against** the King), the **rebellious** conspirators

(**fully**) **intend to rebel / revolt (against** the King).

10 As the **`rebels** (**fully**) **intend** (E&) **rebell**ing / **revolt**ing,

the **intended** purpose of their plans is **rebellion / revolt**.

The **rebellious** nobles **have every intention of** **rebell**ing.

Conspiring **with intent to rise (up) against** the King,
the rebels conspire **with the intention of toppling** the King.

So the rebellion **is intended to bring () down** the King
as it **is** the conspirators' **intention to overthrow** the King.

It is their **intention that** the rebellion will spread.

It is intended that other manors **rise in rebellion / revolt**
(**against** the King and his reforms).

20 The conspirators **intend** other nobles **to** join the rebellion.

The conspirators **intend that** each of them are going to
lead a local **rebellion, starting from** each of their manors.

Confident that all enemies of the King will **rise in revolt**,
the noblemen are determined to **lead** a local **revolt**.

They **have every intention of being** in the head of a revolt.

It **is** their **intention to be** in the head of a local revolt.

Intent (adj.) **(up)on regicide**, the head of the conspiracy is,
however, **intent (up)on committing regicide** one way
or the other whenever the unusual **circumstances**

30 **offer** the **opportunity to** assassinate the King.

The King might become the **intended victim of**
a **staged accident** whenever the **opportunity offered itself**.

So **in full assurance that** a **spreading revolt** will lead to
revolutionary uprisings, the **warlords** are intent (up)on
staging an **extensive revolt against** the King.

In the confident assurance that growing revolt
will **cause a revolution**, the **revolutionary** noblemen
rise (up) / rebel / revolt to start a revolution.

- * indhulle > * dispositioner * i hemmelighed * holde >
foranstaltninger ~ mørklægge <
- * (viden om) forrædderi * hemmeligt for ng.
& ~ fortie ngt. for ng.
- * hvad angår, & overfor ng.
- * gå så vidt som til at - * løfte en flig af hemmelig-
hedens slør
- * komme i seng * vågen
- * ~ berøre (problem) flygtigt
- * have > i sinde / påtænke > * oprør, opstand
(at iscenesætte / anstifte >)
- * (mod ng.) * oprørsk
- * (helt og aldeles) påtænke / * gøre oprør
have til hensigt at - (mod ng.)
- * - = -
- * påtænkt / tiltænkt (formål) * oprør / opstand
- * oprørsk * have allehånde hensigter om at -
- * i den hensigt at - * rejse sig imod ng.
- * med det formål / den hensigt at - * vælte ng.
- * være tiltænkt det formål at - * vælte ng.
- * være ngs. hensigt at - * gøre oprør mod ng.
- * hensigt at -
- * påtænkt / * rejse sig > * i oprør / opstand
meningen at -
- * mod ng. / ngt.
- * påtænke ng. ⇔ at -
- * påtænke at -
- * lede > * oprør * begynde / ~ udgå fra (sted)
opstand
- * overbevist om at - * rejse sig > * i oprør / opstand
- * lede > * =
- * have allehånde hensigter om at -
- * være ngs. hensigt at -
- * opsat på ngt. * kongemord
- * ... at -
- * omstændighederne
- * frembyder > * muligheden for at -
- * påtænkt * offer for >
- * fingeret * ulykke * lejligheden > * frembyde sig
- * i sikker forvisning om * & omsiggribende
- * revolutionær opstand * oprørsk krigsherre
- * iscenesætte > * omfattende * opstand mod ng.
- * i sikker forvisning om at - * voksende * opstand
- * forårsage > * revolution * revolutionær
omvæltning
- * ~ gøre opstand * starte > * revolution

491 The **revolutionaries** aim at getting rid of the King,
and **aim to** change the political system.

In the head of a **revolutionary** aristocratic **movement**,
the revolutionary leaders have plans to **form** a **junta**,
a military aristocratic government to control the country.

Even if they have tried to **keep** their **intentions dark secret**,
the King has, however, **stolen a march from** the rebels.

With **consummate** skill, in **deepest secrecy**,
the King has **infiltrated** his spies **into** the traitor's **haunts**.

10 Having **infiltrated into** the revolutionary **circles**,
the **infiltrators** have **infiltrated** the revolutionary movement.

Thanks to the **infiltration**, troops loyal to the King are
prepared to **suppress, quash** and **crush** the **rebellion** (etc.).

Before the conspirators could reach their manors
most of them were spotted by the King's men and arrested.

Sent out to **put () down** the **revolt**, the royal troops
succeeded in **putting** an **end to** the **uprising** within a few days.

The country has been **heading towards** revolution.

It has been a country **on the brink of** revolution.

20 In case of an aristocratic revolution,

the King has **contemplated** a **counterrevolution**

The head conspirator has, however, **smelled a rat**.

So he **flees** through a **secret door**.

Having **fled** through a **secret passage**,
the traitor **disappears / vanishes without (a) trace**.

At first when the **secret police** come for his arrest,
they are unable to **find** any **trace (U)** of the traitor,
or **discover** any **traces of** the crime.

There's **no trace of** the traitor.

30 Though a criminal usually **leaves traces of** the crime,
every **trace of** the traitor and **all trace(s)** of the crime
have been **effaced**.

Having **covered** his **tracks**, the **fugitive from** justice
and the police seems **over the hills and far away**.

People are **called (up)on** to **denounce** the traitor
to the police, but although the police do all they can
to trace the **subversive fugitive**, they have little hope of
tracing the **fugitive subversive at the present time**.

* revolutionær	* sigte efter / mod at -
* - = -	
* revolutionær	* bevægelse
* danne >	* junta
* holde >	* hensigter * ~ dybt * hemmelige
* ~ komme ng. i forkøbet	
* fuldendt (dygtighed)	* i dybeste / al hemmelighed i det skjulte
* ~ få ng. til at infiltrere >	* tilholdssted
* ~ smyge sig ind i >	* kredse
* " infiltrator "	* infiltrere ngt.
* slå > ned / knuse >	* oprør, opstand
* gøre en ende på >	* =
* styre / have kurs mod (revolution)	
* være på randen af (=)	
* påtænke / udtænke ngt.	* kontra-, modrevolution
* lugte >	* rotte
* hemmelig	* lugte lunt
* flygte	* hemmelig * passage
* forsvinde	* ~ løngang * ~ sporløst
* hemmelig	* politi
* finde >	* (noget som helst) spor af ng.
* opdage >	* (nogen) spor af ngt.
* intet ...	
* efterlade spor om ngt.	
* ... efter ng. / ngt.	
* fjerne ngt. / få ngt. til at forsvinde	
* skjule >	* sine spor * flugtperson fra ngt. / ng.
* ~ over alle bjerge	
* opfordre ng. til at -	* angive ng. >
* til (politiet)	
* opspore ng.	* samfundsmvæltende * flugtperson
* spore ng.	* flygtende * samfundsmvælter * for nu- / nærværende

492 It revolts most people **to** hear rumours of **treachery**.

When the conspiracy **comes to light**, the town is **in revolt**.

The rumours of **treason revolt** most people.

They are **revolted by** the rumours of (**high**) **treason**.

Revolting at **betrayal**, most people revolt at the **betrayal**.

Most people **condemn** the conspirators **as traitors to**
the country and **traitors to** the King.

The town **is up in arms about** the **revolt**ing news.

The rumours of a **traitorous** and **treacherous** conspiracy

10 produce a **wave of** anger and **revulsion against**

the **betrayers** and their **traitorous infamy**.

The rumours of an **intended regicide** fill people with
revulsion against the **cowardly** and **traitorous plotters**.

The march of civilization **brings along** moral principles
that **march with** different groups of people.

Most people **feel revulsion from** acts of violence.

Feeling a revulsion against assassination,
most citizens **feel a deep sense of revulsion at regicide**.

Having **intrigued** (**with** the traitress) (**against** the King),

20 highly trusted noblemen have, among other **infamies**,
operated **in collusion with** the traitress.

The **collusion between** trusted noblemen

and the **infamous** traitress will **remain / live in infamy**.
Several trusted noblemen have **colluded**.

They have **colluded in** the **outrageous** conspiracy.

They have **colluded to** overthrow the King.

They have **colluded in** rebelling against the King.

They have **colluded with** the traitor.

They have **colluded with** the traitor **in** the conspiracy.

30 They have **colluded with** the traitor **to** overthrow the King.

They have **colluded with** him **in** rebelling against the King,
and, **in an act of betrayal**, **turned traitors** themselves.

Although his **mind rebels**, these people's **infamous** acts
have taught the King to be **oversuspicious of** everybody.

He **denies** quicker action could have **averted** the revolt.

' I **deny that** I could have **headed () off subversive** activity
and **prevented** the rebellion,' the King **expostulates**

Intrigued by political **intrigue** and **intricate intrigues**,
people are intrigued by the **intricacy** and **intricacies** of politics.

* oprøre ng. at - * (lands- / konge-) forræderi
svig, løftebrud, troløshed
* komme for dagen / for en dag * i oprør
* (lands- / konge-) etc. * oprøre ng.
* oprørt over * høj- * forrædderi
* føle afsky over ngt. * forræderi etc. * =
* fordømme ng. som ngt. * forræder mod ngt.
* ... mod ng.
* i oprør over ngt. * oprørende (nyheder)
* forrædderisk, svigefuld * =
upålidelig, bedragerisk
* ~ fremkalde > * bølge af (vrede) * afsky mod ngt.
* forræder * forræderisk * skændig karakter /
opførsel
* påtænkt * kongemord * fylde ng. med >
/ - morder
* afsky for ng. * kujonagtig * forræderisk * komplot-
mager
* ~ udvikling * føre ngt. med sig
* harmonere med ng.
* føle afsky (over-) for / væmmelse ved ngt.
* =
* = * kongemord
* intrigue * sammen med ng. * mod ng.
* højt * betroet * skændselsgering
* i hemmelig forståelse / samarbejde > * med ng.
* - - - mellem ng.
* infam, berygtet * forblive / leve / * i skændsel
~ blive husket
* arbejde hemmeligt sammen
* ... i ngt. * skændig
* ... for at -
* ... om at -
* & være i ledtog / spille under dække med ng.
* ... med ng. i ngt.
* ... med ng. for at -
* ... med ng. om at -
* i > * handling af > * forræderi * blive > * forræder
(selv)
* gøre modstand * infam, modbydelig
* overmistænksom overfor ng.
* benægte at - * afværge /
forhindre ngt.
* = * = * samfundsomvæltende
* afværge / forhindre ngt. * argumentere
indvende, protestere
* fascineret af > * intrigemageri * indviklede * intriger
* indviklethed * indviklede detaljer

493 It seems the police has **lost all trace of** the traitor

until a **secret closet**, **bearing traces of** the crime, is found
together with documents **showing traces of** the crime.

The conspirators have **closeted themselves away**

in the small **room** functioning as a **secret closet**.

The traitor has **been closeted with** the rest of

the **secret society** in order to hold **clandestine** meetings.

Although some of the writing has become **light**,

the **secret** documents **disclose / reveal collusive** plans.

10 Countersignatures on some **countersigned** documents

prove that the traitor is **colluding with** some people of

the neighbouring **city state** and its **collusive dependencies**.

Seen in that light, things easily **get heavy**.

More noblemen **come under suspicion**.

Some **suspected** noblemen **deny** all **accusations**.

They **strenuously deny** attempting to overthrow the King.

They **strongly deny assisting** in conspiracy .

They **vehemently deny** any **allegation of co(-)operation** in
conspiracy to assassinate the King **avid for reform**.

20 Denying the truth, some **deny** all **charges** against them.

They repeat their **vehement denials of** the **charges**.

They maintain their **denial that** the **charge** is **true**.

When the truth about he **treacherous** plot to overthrow

the **reformist** King is **made publicly** and **generally available**,
it **revolts** all **reformers** and a lot of **moderate citizens**.

People are **appalled at** the traitor's **denial of** his country.

Committing treason against the reformist King,

is a **revolting** act in / E& to all **zealous reformists' eyes**.

Having **betrayed** his country, by his despicable **betrayal**,

30 treachery and **treason**, this **treacherous** and **traitorous**
betrayed and **traitor** is nothing but a **revolting wretch**.

A **storm** of **indignation rises from** among the public.

Arousing a chorus of indignation, such **revolting**,

treacherous, traitorous, treasonable and **treasonous** acts

provoke a storm of protest.

Vehement in their protest, people **stage a protest against**
the **rabid** reactionaries.

People hold an **indignation meeting** in order to

show their **indignant** and **vehement protest**.

* miste fært af ng.

* hemmeligt * privatkammer * bære > * spor af ngt.
~ lønkammer

* vise >

* =

* lukke sig inde (for at være privat)

* i > * rum * hemmeligt * privatkammer
(garderobrum)

* være lukket inde med ng. (for at være privat)

* hemmeligt selskab

* fordækt

* utydeligt

* = * afsløre > * hemmelig aftalt (plan)

* kontra- / dobbeltsignatur * kontrasigneret /
dobbeltunderskrevet

* bevise at - * være i hemmelig forståelse /
spille under dække med ng.

* bystat * ~ hemmeligt samarbejdende * lydland

* set i det lys * tingene > * ~ udvikle sig alvorligt /
truende

* komme under mistanke

* mistænkt * benægte ng. * anklage

* ihærdig, ivrig * benægte at -

* på det kraftigste * ... at - * medvirke i ng.

* lidenskabeligt * ... > * påstand om > * medvirken i ng.
heftigt, vrede

* ivrig efter > * reform

~ reformivrig

* fornægte > *

mod ng.

* harmdirrende * afvisning af > * anklage

* ... af at - * anklage * sand

* forræderisk

* reform- * gjort > * offentlig * almindelig * tilgængelig
venlig

* oprøre ng. * reformator

* bestyrtet / * fornægtelse af ngt.
forfærdet over

* begå > * højforræderi mod ng.

* oprørende * i > * ivrig * ~ reformtilhængers * øjne
(handling)

* forråde / svigte (land) * forræderi, svig

* = * (lands- / konge-) * forræderisk * (- -)
forræderi svigefuld forræderisk

* forræder * lands-... * afskyelig * usling

* storm af > * & forargelse * rejser sig fra ng.
forbitrelse, harme

* vække > * kor af > * - - - * afskyelig /
oprørende >

* forræderisk > * lands-... * = * = (handling)

* fremkalde > * ~ proteststorm

* heftig * i & ~ modstand * arrangere > * ~ protest-
vedholdende aktion mod >

* rabiat

* forargelse, harme

* møde

~ protestmøde

* harmdirrende

* <<<

* =

494 Relations (pl.) **with** the city state **are under strain**.

The King's spokesman **refuses to** either **confirm** or **deny**
a **mass** of **rumours**.

Having read the **compromising** documents,
the King decides to carry out **secret diplomacy**
in the natural / normal / usual course of events.

The King wants to improve the **relations between** the two
states **with** the greatest possible **dispatch** /E& **despatch**.

So the King **sets pen to paper**.

10 Writing in pen and ink he uses **blotting paper**

in order not to **smear** the writing.

He takes care not to **smudge** the writing **with** his sleeve.

When the writing has dried, it won't **smear / smudge**.

Once in a while he **raps** the table with his pen.

The area around the **inkpot** or **inkwell** is full of **smears**.

With dispatch, the King writes an **in** /E& **enquiring** letter
for **dispatch** in order to **get light on** the problem.

The King **fastens** an **envelope** containing some **inquiries**.

In the natural / normal / usual course of things, a **King's**

20 messenger is **dispatched** (**to** the city state) in order
to pass () **on a message** (**from** the King) **to** the city state.

Awaiting events, the King expects that

in the natural / normal / usual course of events

a peaceful settlement will be found.

The city state replies to the King's letter **very quickly / soon**.

When the **dispatch carrier**, however, **hands in**
the **dispatch** from the city state, the King **is appalled**.

In the natural / normal / usual course of events,

the conflict would have been **settled** peacefully, but now

30 the city state has **broken off diplomatic relations with**
the kingdom (**Don't shoot the messenger** !).

Diplomatic **relations between** the two states as well as
other official **connections between** them are **broken off**.

The King **feels a jolt** of **dismay** at the news.

It **jolts** the King **into deep trouble**.

The news is **greeted with dismay**, as **storm clouds**
are gathering over the relations between the two states.

Could the reason for the **diplomatic rupture**
simply be a piece of **clumsy diplomacy** ?

* ~ forholdet til ng. > * være anstrengt

* afvise / nægte at - * bekræfte > * benægte >

* masse / mængde (af) > * rygter

* kompromitterende

* hemmeligt * diplomati

* ~ som led i den almindelige fremgangsmåde

* relationerne / forbindelserne mellem ng.

* i en fart

* sætte > * pen > * til papir

* skrive med > * pen of blæk * ~ klat-/ træpapir

* tvære ngt. ud

* ... med > * ærme

* tværes ud

* tromme på ngt.

* blækhus * indbygget ... * plet

* ~ i al hast * forespørgende

* afsendelse, besøgelse * få kastet lys over
(hurtig) ekspedition

* lukke > fast * konvolut * forespørgsel

* ~ som det plejer at være * ~ kongeligt

* sendebud * sendt ng. afsted * til et sted

* viderebringe > * meddelelse (fra ng.) til ng.

* afvente begivenhedernes gang

* ~ går det, som det plejer / skal

*

* meget hurtigt / snart

* kurér * aflevere >

* depeche * være / blive > * bestyrtet, forfærdet

* ~ hvis det var gået, som det plejer

* bilæge (konflikt)

* afbryde > * (de) diplomatiske forbindelser med ng.

* ~ lad det ikke gå ud over budbringeren

* (de) << mellem ng.

* forbindelser mellem ng. * afbryde <

* føle > * en rysten af > * forfærdelse, fortvivelse
~ blive rystet af >

* støde, ~ kaste ng. ud i > * ~ svære * bekymringer
vanskeligheder

* modtaget med > * forfærdelse * uvejrrskeyer >
fortvivelse

* samler sig over ngt.

* diplomatisk * brud

* kluntet * diplomati

495 The King **rises**, his eyes still **fastened on** the dispatch.

War is most likely **under way**.

The King has **come upon quicksand(s)**.

The King is no **armchair politician**, no **armchair hero**
or **armchair strategist** engaging in **armchair speculation(s)**.

It can't **be decided lightly** so he **sleeps on** the problem.

The decision could be one he **lives to regret**.

Having **slept on it** and **weighed (up)** the **relative merits** of
his plans, he realizes he can't **afford a policy of wait-and-see**.

10 So he won't **wait to see what** will happen.

The King won't **wait in order to see** what will happen;
he won't **play a `waiting game** so he **calls a council of war**.

Everything seems to show that the city state
considers retaliatory action / measures .

There is every indication that the city state
is up to armed conflict.

All indications are that the city state **mediate**
an **armed struggle against** the kingdom.

As there is **little support for a waiting game**,
20 and **strong support for** final **countermeasures**,
the King and his **crisis staff** decide **with much regret**
to **fight a war on / against** the **unexpected enemy**.

The **air is charged with tension** as they have to
make a **quick, speedy and swift decision**.

After a debate, not intended for **public consumption**,
The King and his council **grasp the nettle** (E).
Agreeing to **wage (a) war on / against** the city state,
they decide to **wage war** at once.

They want to **make war** immediately in order to **forestall**
30 the enemy's plan.

In order to **forestall** the enemy by **force of arms**,
the kingdom **mobilizes** at once.

Confident of the army's **armament** (U),
and relying on it's up-to-date **armaments**(pl.),
the King immediately **mobilizes** the **army** in order to
make war against / on the city state as soon as possible.

Many weapons had **become obsolete / out of date**
but fortunately the King's **provident** Minister of Defence
has had their **absolute / out-of-date** weapons replaced.

* rejse sig * fæstnet på

* på vej, under opsejling, i gang

* ~ være havnet i en vanskelig situation

* (lænestols-) * politiker * ~ skrivebordshelt
~ skrivebords- pennehelt

* ~ hjemmefrontsstrateg * ~ skrivebordsfilosofi

* afgøres * ~ uden videre * & tænke over ngt.
& ikke nogen let / nem beslutning til næste dag

* ~ komme til at fortryde fremover

* sove på det * afveje > * forholdsmæssig * fortrin

* tillade sig > * politik ⇔ * & afventende

* vente og se / se tiden an hvad -

* vente > * for at - * se hvad -

* ~ stille sig afventende * indkalde til > * krigsråd
indtage en afventende holdning

* ~ alt tyde på at -

* overveje > * gengældelses- * aktion / foranstaltninger
& mod-

* <<

* ~ pønse på > * væbnet * konflikt

* ~ alle tegn peger på at - * pønse på >

* væbnet kamp mod ng.

* (kun) lidt > * opbakning til > * ~ afventende holdning

* stærk > * = * modforholdsregler

* krisestab * med (megen) beklagelse

* udkæmpe > * krig mod > * uventet * fjende
uforudset

* luften * ladet med > * spænding

* hurtig * beslutning

* offentlig * forbrug
~ offentlighedens kendskab

* gribe om nældens rod
~ gå i gang med noget ubehageligt

* føre krig mod ng.

* føre krig

* = * komme ngt. i forkøbet

*

* komme ng. i forkøbet * ~ våbenmagt

* mobilisere

* oprustning, våbenforsyning

* beholdning af forskellige våben

* mobilisere > * hæren

* føre krig mod ng.

* blive forældet

* forudseende

* forældet (våben)

496 Giving their military plan **the green`light**,

the King **gives** the general staff **the green light**.

Giving the green light to the general staff,
he **gives the green light to** immediate **mobilization**.

During the **armament**, while the army is **equipped**
and **armed for** war, the soldiers prepare themselves
to **go to a war** and **fight in a war**.

When all the **armed forces mobilize**, the soldiers are
prepared to **go to the war** and **march on** the city state.

10 Preparing for a **march on** the enemy, they prepare to
go to the wars and **fight in the war**.

An army marches on its stomach.

When the soldiers **go to the war with** the city state
they leave their loved ones **with a heavy heart**.

The country is **on a war footing**.

In the nobility **it is** the **tradition (for the sons) to** choose
arms as their profession.

In the army there's a long **tradition that** the **army officers**
are recruited from the nobility.

20 Having **been on the battlefield / <ground, drawn up**
in battle array / order, and **fought on** the **battlefield / < ...**,
many officers **are experienced** in **war craft** and **warfare**.

On parade, war heroes and **war veterans, decorated**
for their bravery or military honour, **wear** their **decorations**,
i.e. their **medals** and **ribbons**.

A **battle-hardened** soldier **shows a contempt for** danger,
and an officer must **show a contempt for** his own security.

Most officers have a **hard-handed approach to** disciplin.

They walk around **rapping (out)** orders.

30 Once in a while, the soldiers have participated in
a **war game**, a **simulated** military operation carried out
to test the **validity** of a war plan or an **operational** concept.

Being a soldier is a job in which a variety of skills
will be **deployed**.

Deployment of talent, skills, and resources is important.

Clever **deployments** of troops and weapons are of
decisive strategic(al) importance.

The kingdom is, **to E/A for all intents and`purposes**,
at war: at war with the city state.

* ~ give grøntlys for ngt.

* ... ng.

* =

* = * mobilisering

* krigsforberedelse * (blive) udstyret >

* bevæbnet til (krig)

* gå i krig * kæmpe i krig

* væbnede * styrker * mobilisere

* gå / drage > * ~ i krig * marchere mod ngt.

* march mod ngt.

* ~ gå i krig / drage i felten * kæmpe i krigen

* ~ en hær fungerer på fyldte maver

* << mod ng.

* med tungt hjerte

* på krigsfod

* det er traditionen (for ng.) at -

* ~ militæret

* tradition for at - * militær- * officer
& officer i hæren

* være på slagmarken * opstille ng. >

* i > * slagorden * kæmpet > * på ...

* ~ have erfaring (i >) * krigskunst * krigsførelse

* ~ ved > * parade * krigshelt * -veteran * dekoreret >

* for ngt. * bære > * dekorationer

* medalje * ordensbånd

* ~ krigshærdet * vise > * foragt for (fare)
~ byde (farer) trods

* ~ se stort på ngt.

* hårdhændet * tilgang til ngt.

* udslynge (ordre)

*

* krigsspil * simuleret, efterlignet

* gyldighed, brugbarhed * operationel
udførelsmæssig

*

* anvende / udnytte (færdigheder)

* -lse

* indsættelse, udsendelse
opstilling

* afgørende * strategisk

* for så vidt, praktisk talt

* i krig * ... med ng.

WAR

497 As **attack is the best defence**, the King's plan is to **attack** the enemy by a **lightning attack**.

In order to **make lightning war**, the kingdom doesn't

declare war on the city state **until the moment / instant** (that) it **opens war on** the enemy.

The King **deploys** the **army corps**: two **regiments**
sg. kâ / pl. kâz
each of four **battalions** each of four **companies**, thousands of
men of all **arms**, some of them **heavily armed troops**.

Ordinary people are **at a (complete) loss to** understand

10 why there's **war between** the kingdom **and** the city state.

As they are **unable to** understand reason for the kingdom's
a **war against / with** the city state, ordinary people **cannot**
account for (what led to) the **outbreak of war**.

So the army officers try to explain why **war broke out**.

The King only reluctantly **went to war with** the city state.

He didn't **go to war** unless all alternatives had failed.

Going to the war, everybody fights for the kingdom's
victory and the city state's **defeat in the war**.

The **arms** are the **infantry**, the **cavalry**, and the **artillery**.

20 When the **combat troops** train or **go to fight**,
they wear a **military uniform** perhaps **regimental dress** (U).

Men-at-arms, officers and privates, **carry light weapons**
like **handguns** and other **guns** while the **heavy weapons** –
light and heavy **artillery** – are **pulled by warhorses**.

^{g`tilêri}
The officers carry **small arms** (pl.) like a **loaded pistol**.

People are said to be **fast / quick on the draw**

if they are either able to **draw** a **gun** quickly

in order to **pull / squeeze** the **trigger** and shoot

or quick to understand or react in a new situation.

30 Whether a gun is a **weapon of offence**, or a **weapon of**
defence depends upon which end of it you are at.

Some people are too **trigger-happy** and **trigger-ready**.

Infantry soldiers / infantrymen carry **muskets** or **rifles**.

Armed with rifles with **bayonets**, the **front-line** troops

only carry a **light load** on their back in order to be able to

overwhelm the enemy by a **lightning stroke**.

Trying to **bayonet** each other **at close quarters**, the **foes**
in close combat try to **push** their **bayonet into** an **enemy**.

* angreb er det bedste forsvar

* angribe ng.

* lynangreb

* lynkrig

* ikke >

* erklære krig mod ng.

* før >

* det øjeblik at -
& samme ... som -

* indlede (en) krig mod

* indsætte / udsende /
opstille >

* hærenhed

* regiment

* bataljon

* kompani

* våbenart

* svært bevæbnet

* tropper

* være (helt) i vildrede med at -

* krig mellem ng.

* ude af stand til at -

* krig mod ng.

* kan ikke >

* gøre rede for > (hvad ledte til >) * udbrud af > * krig

* krig >

* bryde ud

* gå i krig >

* mod ng.

* gå i krig

* gå / drage >

* i krig

* sejr

* nederlag

* i krigen

* kavaleri

* let

* artilleri

* ~ militær gren

* kamptropper

* tage af sted for at -

* kæmpe

~ gå i kamp

* militæruniform

* regiments- * påklædning

* ~ soldat

* bære >

* lette

* våben

* (enhånds) skydevåben

* =

* tung

* våben

* artilleri

* trække ngt.

* krigshest

* håndvåben

* ladet

* pistol

* hurtig på aftrækkeren / ~ hurtig i vendingen

* trække >

* skydevåben

* ~ trykke på >

* aftrækkeren

*

* våben ⇔ angrebs-

* våben ⇔

* forsvars-

* skydeglade / -gale

* skydeparat

* infanterist * musket, ~ gevær u. riffelgang * riffel
(brugtes samtidig op til midt 1800-tallet)

* bevæbnet

* bajonet

* frontlinie

* let

* byrde

* løbe ng. overende

* lyn-

* ~ angreb

* ~ stikke ng. med bajonet

* ~ i nærkamp

* fjende

* ~ i nærkamp * stikke > * bajonet i >

* fjende
~ fjentlig kriger

498 Fighting in a / the war, soldiers have a heavy workload.	* kæmpe > * i en krig * have > * tung * arbejdsbyrde / krigen
The privates pull a heavy load physically.	* trække > * et tungt * ~ læs * ~ legemligt set
The privates do the heavy work , such as loading (up) ,	* gøre > * det tunge > * arbejde * læsse
unloading, heavy lifting and heavy digging.	* læsse af * tungt * løfteri * = * graverarbejde
It's still dark when the privates start loading (up).	* det er stadig mørkt * laste
Busy loading (up) various vehicles , the privates	* ... > * køretøj
groan under the heavy weight when they load handcarts ,	* stønne / * vægten * laste > * håndvogn
carts and wag(g)ons (up) with trunks of supplies	* vande sig under > * kærre / * firehjulet * med > * rejsekuffert
from the stockpiles (of supplies) kept in the arms depots.	* tohjulet trækvogn lasthestevogn transportkasse
	* beredskabslager * våben- * depot
10 They load the lighter supply onto horse-drawn carts ,	* laste ngt. op på (vogn) * ~ hestekærre
and load the heavier supply into the bigger wagons	* ... op i (vogn)
covered with tarpaulins made of heavy-duty canvas.	* presenning * slidstærkt * kanvas
	* læ- på- linz lærredsdug
Soldiers have to work in harness (with each other) .	* ~ trække på samme hammel
When the soldiers put a load on a vehicle,	* komme læs på (køretøj)
they take care not to overload the vehicle.	* overlæsse / -belaste ngt.
An overloaded vehicle may drop / lose / E shed its load.	* overlæsset * tabe sin last
The soldiers make the loads fast , and fasten the tarps (A)	* ~ fastgøre (læs) * fastgøre > * presenning
(by making strong ropes fast) to the sides of the vehicles.	* ... (reb) til ngt.
Some goods can only be moved with a mighty heave.	* bevægelse (træk / løft / stød)
20 Heaving goods onto or down from the carriages,	* hive ngt. op på / ned fra ngt.
heaving at / on ropes etc., some privates are weighed down.	* hive i (reb) * (blive) overbebyrdet
The officers only do light manuel work.	* lave > * let * manuelt * arbejde
On the other hand they carry a load of responsibility.	* på den anden side * bære > * en byrde af > * ansvar
Some of them are loaded down.	* derimod * være overbebyrdet
The war load some officers down with responsibility.	* overbebyrde ng. med (ansvar)
They are weighed down with responsibility.	* overbebyrdet med ngt.
Even if the officers carry a burden of responsibility,	* være bebyrdet med ngt.
and carry a weight (fig.) on their shoulders , the privates	* bære > * en byrde på > * sine skuldre
and the civilian population bear the main burden of the war.	* civil- * befolkningen * bære (hoved) byrden ved > (krigen)
30 The troopers harness their troopers.	* kavalerist * give seletøj på > * kavaleristhest
Having put harnesses on the warhorses ,	* ~ give ... seletøj på * krigshest
the troopers harness them to the horse-drawn vehicles.	* (lægge) seletøj på > * spænde ng. for > * hestetrukken * køretøj
Linseed / flaxseed oil is used to soften stiff leather strips.	* linolie * blødgøre > * stiv * læder * strimmel
A warhorse must be accustomed to the turmoil of war	* tummel ⇔ * krigs-
so it won't stop (dead) / halt (dead) / freeze in its tracks.	* ~ standse (meget) pludseligt, (blive lamslået)
Carts and waggons (A -g-) drive to the armouries	* kærre * firehjulet hestevogn * våben-
and arsenals to pick up loads of munitions (pl.): weapons,	* (tohjulet hestevogn) (til tungt gods) depot
ammunition and equipment.	* arsenal * ladning * krigsmateriel
Warhorses pull the carriages of the light cannons,	* = * hjulvogn * let * glds. kanon

499 The **fast carriages** are **designed** to **carry** a **light load**.

The wagons **designed for** a **heavy burden** are slow.

Beasts of burden and vehicles must be **lightly**

or not too **heavily loaded** as a **beast of burden**

might not be able to **carry** or **pull** the **load** as well as

the **draught animals** might be unable to **pull** the **heavy load**.

A beast of burden or the wheels of a carriage might not

be able to **bear / sustain** the **weight** (**of** a burden or load).

The army is prepared to **set out at first light** the next day.

10 **At** (the **first gleam / glimmer** of) **`dawn //**

at the crack of dawn // **at the break / crack of day,**

when the **morning / day dawns**, it begins to **get light**.

It gets light at about 6 **o'clock** about half an hour

before **sunrise**.

Ready to **set off / out / (i-f) roll** as soon as **it's light**,

the army **leave** in the morning as soon as **it gets light**.

Following the **fully loaded / laden** vehicles,

loaded down / weighed down / laden with supplies,

the soldiers **march out** (**of** the **royal town**).

20 **Loaded down / weighed down / laden with full**

marching equipment, the soldiers **march on** the city state.

Starting to move along roads towards the **hostile** city state,

the troops **join** (E) the **roads towards** the city state.

Their **backs bowed under** the **weight** of their **packs**

and **battle kits**, some privates **fall over from exhaustion**.

Military carriages carry officers **backwards and forwards**

between the **front** (**line**) and the **headquarters**,

and wounded soldiers back to a **base / camp / field hospital**.

Some officers **ride in** a **cart driven by** a **driver**.

30 Its woodwork **groaning** and **creaking** under its burden,

a **heavily loaded** cart **jolts over** the rough ground,

until the **loaded-down** cart is suddenly **fast in** the mud.

The driver **lightens** (the **load** of) the **loaded-down** cart

to **lighten** the **load on** the wheels, and make a **countermove**.

He **revolves / rotates / turns** the **wheel** a bit of a **counter>**

turn so it can make a **revolution / rotation / turn** the right way.

Having **sunk into** the mud, the wheels of the now **lightly**

loaded cart again **revolve / rotate on** their **axles**.

The wheels **revolve anti> E/A counterclockwise**.

* hurtig * firehjulet hestevogn * beregnet * transportere
(til persontransport) til at- let last

* beregnet til > * tung * byrde, last

* ~ arbejdsdyr * let >

* tungt * belæsset, lastet * ~ arbejdsdyr

* bære > * trække > * læs

* trækdyr * trække > * tung * =

*

* bære > * vægt (af ngt.)

* begive sig / drage / tage af sted * ~ så snart det bliver lyst

* ved daggry * svagt lys (af >) * daggry

* - = -

* morgenen > * dagen > * gry * det bliver lyst

* ... klokken x

* solopgang

* komme afsted * det er lyst

* tage af sted * det bliver ...

* fuldt * lastet

* belæsset / lastet med (forsyninger)

* marchere / drage ud af > * kongelig * by
~ kongebyen

* tungt belæsset * med > * fuld >

* march- * ~ oppakning * marchere mod (sted)

* fjentligsindet

* følge > * vejene mod ngt.

* ryg * bøjet * under vægten af > * oppakning

* kamp- * udstyr * falde omkuld af > * udmattelse

* militær * person- * transportere ng. * tilbage og frem
hestevogn

* mellem > * front * hovedkvarteret

* ~ felt- * hospital

* køre i > * kærre * kørt af > * kusk

* knage * knirke

* tungt belæsset (vogn) * bumle over ngt.

* ~ overlæsset * ~ sidde fast i (mudder)

* gøre > lettere * ~ tungt læsset / lastet
(lette vægten af >)

* vægten på (hjulene) * modbevægelse

* dreje > * hjul * modomdrejning

* (hel) omdrejning

* sunket ned i (mudder) * let >

* lastet * dreje rundt / rotere om > * aksel

* dreje * mod uret

ad 415) Once, when the driver forgot to **set** the **handbrake**,
the car began to **roll**; **rolling away from the kerb** E/A **curb**,
it **rolled back down** a **neglected descent** in the street.

ad 436) It's possible to **judge how** far away the lightning is.

You can **judge** the **distance** as the light will reach you
practically immediately while it takes the sound
about three seconds to travel every kilometre.

ad 467) **Portraying** the **appaling / dreadful living conditions**
of the poor, often living **in overcrowded conditions**,
the book gives a **devastating portrait / portrayal** of life
under humiliating conditions in **abject** poverty.

ad 477) Realizing that his arguments are **unsustainable**,
the nobleman realizes that they have no **sustainability**.

So arguing further would only **give** further **sustenance** to
the King's **arguments**.

* ~ sætte håndbremsen til

* rulle / trille * ... tilbage fra > * kantsten

* ... baglæns ned ad > * overset * nedskråning i ngt.

* bedømme hvor -

* bedømme > * afstand

*

*

* portrætter > * forfærdende * skrækkelig * livs-

* i > * overbefolkede * omgivelser

* sønderlemmende * portræt * portrættering af ngt.

* under * ydmyg- * betingelser * (i) ussel (fattigdom)
ende

* uholdbar

* holdbarhed, styrke

* give > * understøttelse / styrke til >

* argumenter